

R E P O R T R E S U M E S

**ED 010 449**

48

CONVERSATIONAL HINDI-URDU, VOLUME 2.

BY- GUMPERZ, JOHN J. AND OTHERS

INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATIONS FOUNDED., MONTEREY PARK, CALIF.

REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-229-3

PUB DATE

63

UNIV. OF CALIF., BERKELEY CAMPUS, INST. OF INT. STUDIES

EDRS PRICE MF-\$0.36 HC-\$10.32 258P.

DESCRIPTORS- \*HINDI, \*URDU, \*LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION,  
\*PRONUNCIATION INSTRUCTION, \*LANGUAGE GUIDES, MONTEREY PARK,  
CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY

THIS PUBLICATION CONTAINS SIX UNITS OF BASIC HINDI-URDU STUDY, EACH UNIT CONSISTING OF TWO CONVERSATIONS. THE CONVERSATIONS REPRESENT TYPES OF CASUAL ENCOUNTERS IN WHICH THE PARTICIPANTS ARE SOCIAL EQUALS, RANGING FROM CASUAL MEETINGS DURING TRAVEL AND TELEPHONE CONVERSATIONS TO INFORMAL "GET-TOGETHERS" AND SITUATIONS INVOLVING DISCUSSIONS OF MODERN POLITICAL AND SOCIAL LIFE OF LOCALES NATIVE TO THE LANGUAGE. A COMPLETE GLOSSARY OF VOCABULARY IS INCLUDED. (REFER TO ED 010 447 AND ED 010 448 FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.) (JH)

**EDo10449**

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE  
Office of Education

This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

**CONVERSATIONAL HINDI-URDU, Volume 2**

**VOLUME II**

by

**JOHN J. GUMPERZ**

with

**A. B. Singh**

and

**C. M. Naim**

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the United States Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

1963

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

### Introduction to Volume II

Page

### Unit V Part A

Conversation: In Vishwanath Gali, Banaras . . . . .	1
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	3
Cultural Notes . . . . .	7
Word Study . . . . .	8
Grammar Drills . . . . .	10
1. Review. . . . .	10
2. Review. . . . .	10
3. <u>-see</u> in comparisons . . . . .	11
4. <u>-see</u> in comparisons . . . . .	12
5. <u>utnaa</u> ... <u>jitnaa</u> . . . . .	13
6. <u>ki</u> constructions. . . . .	14
7. Stylistic alternation drill . . . . .	16
Rapid Response . . . . .	17
Situational Response . . . . .	18
Review Conversations . . . . .	19
In the Baazaar 1-3. . . . .	19
Casual Conversation 4-8 . . . . .	19

### Unit V Part B

	Page
Conversation: With friends in Hazrath Ganj, Lucknow . . . . .	21
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	23
Cultural Notes . . . . .	27
Word Study . . . . .	28
Grammar Drills . . . . .	29
1. Review. . . . .	29
2. Time expressions. . . . .	30
3. <u>iyegaa</u> request forms . . . . .	31
4. <u>-aa</u> participle forms in response to commands. . . . .	32
5. oblique infinitive forms before <u>jaanaa</u> . . . . .	32
6. <u>na</u> otherwise. . . . .	33
7. <u>joo</u> ... <u>woo</u> . . . . .	33
8. <u>binaa</u> 'without' . . . . .	34
9. Review of cardinal numbers. . . . .	35
Rapid Response . . . . .	36
Situational Response . . . . .	37
Review Conversations . . . . .	38
In the Coffee House 1-4 . . . . .	38
On the Street 5-8 . . . . .	39

## Unit VI Part A

	Page
Conversation: Phone conversation about a bus trip . . . . .	40
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	42
Cultural Notes . . . . .	46
Word Study . . . . .	47
Days of the week. . . . .	47
Cardinal numbers 50-60. . . . .	47
Grammar Drills . . . . .	48
1. <u>-kee baaree-mee</u> 'about' . . . . .	48
2. <u>calaa jaanaa</u> . . . . .	49
3. <u>joo</u> ... <u>woo</u> . . . . .	50
4. <u>jaannaa</u> 'to know' and <u>mulaakaat hoona</u> 'be acquainted'. .	52
5. <u>jab</u> ... <u>too</u> . . . . .	52
6. Verbal <u>ee</u> forms in 'if' constructions . . . . .	53
7. <u>cal paanaa</u> . . . . .	54
Rapid Response . . . . .	55
Situational Response . . . . .	56
Review Conversations . . . . .	57
A Bus Trip 1-2. . . . .	57
Casual Conversation 3-8 . . . . .	57

Unit VI Part B

	Page
Conversation: Planning a joint bus trip on the phone. . . . .	59
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	61
Cultural Notes . . . . .	64
Word Study . . . . .	65
Cardinal numbers 61-70. . . . .	65
Grammar Drills . . . . .	66
1. Oblique infinitive with <u>-mēē</u> . . . . .	66
2. Oblique infinitive with <u>-nēē</u> . . . . .	67
3. <u>soocnaa</u> ; <u>ki</u> . . . . .	68
4. Dates . . . . .	69
5. <u>jitnaa</u> ... <u>utnaa</u> . . . . .	70
6. <u>nahīī</u> <u>too</u> 'if not'. . . . .	71
7. Review. . . . .	72
8. Time and number review. . . . .	73
Rapid Response . . . . .	74
Situational Response . . . . .	75
Review Conversations . . . . .	76
A Bus Trip 1-4. . . . .	76
Casual Conversation . . . . .	77

## Unit VII Part A

	Page
Conversation: Talking to travellers on a Ganges steamer, Patna. .	78
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	80
Cultural Notes . . . . .	83
Word Study . . . . .	84
Months of the year. . . . .	84
Cardinal numbers 70-85. . . . .	84
Grammar Drills . . . . .	85
1. Review. . . . .	85
2. Verb roots with <u>-kar</u> . . . . .	85
3. <u>prabandh</u> <u>hoonaa</u> 'to have arrangements (for)'. . . . .	86
4. <u>jab</u> ... <u>too</u> . . . . .	87
5. Contrary to fact clauses. . . . .	88
6. The past of <u>caahiye</u> . . . . .	89
7. <u>šuruu</u> <u>karnaa</u> and oblique infinitive with <u>lagnaa</u> . . . . .	90
8. <u>kahāā</u> in emphatic answers . . . . .	91
9. Review of dates . . . . .	92
Rapid Response . . . . .	93
Situational Response . . . . .	94
Review Conversations . . . . .	95
At the Station 1-3. . . . .	95
Casual Conversation 4-5 . . . . .	95
About the Weather 6-8 . . . . .	96



### Unit VII Part B

	Page
Conversation: Talking to travellers on a Ganges steamer, Patna. .	97
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	99
Cultural Notes . . . . .	102
Word Study . . . . .	103
Numbers 85-100 and beyond . . . . .	103
Grammar Drills . . . . .	104
1. Review. . . . .	104
2. <u>aayaa karnaa</u> and similar verb constructions . . . . .	105
3. Oblique of <u>-taa</u> participle plus <u>rahnaa</u> . . . . .	106
4. The adverbial oblique of <u>-taa</u> participles . . . . .	107
5. <u>hootaa hoonaa</u> . . . . .	108
6. <u>iraadaa karnaa</u> . . . . .	110
7. <u>zaruurat</u> and <u>zaruurii</u> . . . . .	111
8. 'if' constructions with and without <u>agar</u> . . . . .	112
9. <u>zaruurat</u> and <u>zaruurii</u> continued . . . . .	114
10. Review, politeness expressions. . . . .	114
Rapid Response . . . . .	115
Situational Response . . . . .	116
Review Conversations . . . . .	117
Progress in Modern India 1-3. . . . .	117
Travelling 4-6. . . . .	117
Casual Conversation 7-8 . . . . .	118

### Unit VIII Part A

	Page
Conversation: In the home of a Hindu friend, Allahabad. . . . .	119
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	121
Cultural Notes . . . . .	124
Word Study . . . . .	125
Terms for family relationships. . . . .	125
Rapid Response . . . . .	127
Grammar Drills . . . . .	129
1. The <u>-taa</u> participle constructions, continued. . . . .	129
2. <u>jaan paRnaa</u> . . . . .	129
3. <u>-aa</u> and <u>-taa</u> participles used as adjectives and nouns . .	131
4. <u>jab-tak</u> constructions . . . . .	131
5. <u>šaadii hoonaa</u> and <u>šaadii karnaa</u> . . . . .	132
6. Stylistic alternation . . . . .	133
Situational Response . . . . .	134
Review Conversations . . . . .	136
In the Home of a Friend 1-3 . . . . .	136
Health 4-6. . . . .	136
About Eating 7-9. . . . .	137
Concerning House and Home 10-12 . . . . .	138

### Unit VIII Part B

	Page
Conversation: In the home of a Muslim friend, Aligarh . . . . .	139
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	141
Cultural Notes . . . . .	145
Word Study . . . . .	147
Common Hindu and Muslim greetings . . . . .	147
Rapid Response . . . . .	149
Grammar Drills . . . . .	151
1. <u>ijaazat</u> . . . . .	151
2. Inflected forms of <u>joo</u> ... <u>woo</u> . . . . .	152
3. <u>itnaa bahut</u> . . . . .	153
4. <u>aadat paRnaa</u> . . . . .	153
5. Stylistic alternation . . . . .	154
Situational Response . . . . .	155
Review Conversations . . . . .	156
Talking to a Friend 1-6 . . . . .	156
Casual Conversation 7-12. . . . .	157

### Unit IX Part A

	Page
Conversation: Meeting old acquaintances, village in Saharanpur District . . . . .	159
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	161
Cultural Notes . . . . .	165
Word Study . . . . .	167
Rapid Response . . . . .	168
Situational Response . . . . .	170
Review Conversations . . . . .	172
Talking to Villagers 1-5. . . . .	172
Talking to Old Acquaintances 6-9. . . . .	173
Eating at a Friend's House 10-12. . . . .	174

### Unit IX Part B

Conversation: A day of vacation, Nainital, in the mountains . . . .	175
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	177
Cultural Notes . . . . .	180
Word Study . . . . .	181
Rapid Response . . . . .	182
Situational Response . . . . .	184
Review Conversations . . . . .	185
On the Mall 1-5 . . . . .	185
On the Road 6-8 . . . . .	186
Vacations 9-12. . . . .	186

### Unit X Part A

	Page
Conversation: Getting acquainted with the operation of Sapru House, New Delhi. . . . .	188
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	190
Cultural Notes . . . . .	194
Word Study . . . . .	195
Rapid Response . . . . .	196
Situational Response . . . . .	198
Review Conversations . . . . .	199
On the Road 1-4 . . . . .	199
In the Office 5-8 . . . . .	200
In the Library 9-12 . . . . .	200

### Unit X Part B

Conversation: With a village level worker in a village development block . . . . .	202
Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation . . . . .	204
Cultural Notes . . . . .	208
Word Study . . . . .	209
Rapid Response . . . . .	210
Situational Response . . . . .	212
Review Conversations . . . . .	213
In the Village 1-10 . . . . .	213
In the Office 11-12 . . . . .	215

	Page
Appendix . . . . .	216
1. Cardinal Numbers 1-100 and above. . . . .	216
2. Common Fractions. . . . .	217
3. Ordinal Numbers first to twelfth and additional examples. . . . .	217
4. Days of the Week; Hindi and Urdu alternants . . . . .	217
5. Time of Day, non-specific . . . . .	217
6. Months of the Year. . . . .	218
7. Seasons . . . . .	218
8. Telling Time. . . . .	218
9. Terms for Time Spans - second, minute, etc. . . . .	218
10. Weights . . . . .	218
11. Measures. . . . .	219
12. Money . . . . .	219
 Hindi-English Glossary Volumes I and II. . . . .	 220

## INTRODUCTION

Units one through four of this text have illustrated the most important aspects of elementary Hindi grammar. Situational settings were kept simple, so as to enable the student to concentrate on automatic control of grammar patterns. If he is to interact freely in a Hindi-speaking community, however, the student will have to learn to apply these patterns in a variety of other situations. This requires considerably more practice, which the present volume is designed to provide. Relatively few new points of grammar are introduced, the emphasis is on the practice of old patterns in contexts of greater social complexity and in larger syntactic construction.

The actors in the new social situations are primarily educated persons and they interact as social equals. This provides an opportunity for the introduction of a variety of new idioms, greetings, politeness formulas and the like. Both Hindi and Urdu, formal and informal styles will be used, each in its proper setting so as to acquaint the beginner with the relation of style to context. Stylistic variants will be explained in the word study section. Grammar drills will be less structured and less detailed than those in volume one and grammar notes are provided only in a few instances. The emphasis shifts from formal drill to question and answer and conversation practice. Although the conversations on the whole do not increase greatly in length, individual sentences tend to be longer and syntactic complexity greater. Memorization of texts will be correspondingly more difficult, but this can be offset in part by practicing the conversations by subroutine. The subroutines themselves make an excellent starting point for conversational practice. Many of the review conversations build on them.

The material in this volume is divided into six units, each containing two conversations, of roughly equivalent social and grammatical complexity. Not all of these conversations need be completed during the second semester of instruction. They are equally suitable for supplementary conversational practice in a third semester course.

Unit V Part A

Conversation

- 1 kaašii-kii wišwanaath-jii-kii galii-mēē.  
2 waraaNasii, uttar pradeeš.
- 

- 3 panDit: yahii kaašii-kii prasiddh wišwanaath-jii-kii galii hai.  
4 wideešii: kahiye panDit-jii, kyaa yee sac hai, ki banaaras bhaarat-kaa sab-see puraanaa šahar hai?  
5 panDit: jii hāā, yah too praaciin kaal-see hii hinduōō-kaa tiirth sthaan rahaa hai.  
6 wideešii: aap too bahut šuddh hindii booltee hāī. is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai?  
7 panDit: kaaraN kuch bhii nahīī.  
kaašii-mēē too aisii hindii boolii hii jaatii hai.
- 

- 8 wideešii: aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yee bahut puraanaa baazaar hai.  
9 panDit: jii hāā, yah baazaar bhii utnaa hii puraanaa hai jitnaa ki yah nagar.  
10 wideešii: acchaa, tabhii too yee galii itnii sākrii hai.  
11 panDit: leekin meeraa wicaar hai, ki phir bhii is-mēē aaraam-see aap jaa saktii hāī.
- 

- 12 is galii-mēē sab prakaar-kii wastuōō-kii dukaanēē hāī.  
13 wideešii: kyaa yee bartan yahīī kaašii-mēē bantee hāī?  
14 panDit: adnik-tar too yahīī bantee hāī. šeeš baahar-see māgaace jaatee hāī.  
15 wideešii: yee cappalēē kis prakaar-kii hāī.  
in-mēē camRaa nahīī lagaa hai, kyaa?  
16 panDit: un-koo khaRaauū kahtee hāī. wee keewal lakRii-kee hii hootee hāī.
-



- 17 wideešii: aur joo aurat udhar baiThii hai, wah kyaa kar rahii hai.  
18 panDit: wah buRhiyaa aurtōō-kee šringaar-kii saamagrii beec rahii hai.  
19 wideešii: yahāā phuul kis liyee biktee hāī?  
20 panDit: loog mandir-ūēē caRhaanee-kee liyee, yahāā-see phuul lee jaatee hāī.  
21 yahāā dhaarmik pustakēē bik rahii hāī.
- 

- 22 wideešii: kyaa bajaa hai?  
23 panDit: caar bajnee-waalee hāī.  
24 wideešii: tab too waapas calaa jaaee, abhii eek aur sajjan-see milnee jaanaa hai.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

	panDit wideešii	A priest (m) A foreigner
	kaašii wišwanaath galii	Kashi (Banaras city) Vishwanath (Hindu God) (m) lane
1	<u>kaašii-kii wišwanaath-jii-kii galii-mēē.</u>	<u>Kashi, Vishwanath Gali.</u>
	waraaNasii uttar pradeeš uttar pradeeš	Banaras north (adj) province (m) Uttar Pradesh (state)
2	<u>waraaNasii, uttar pradeeš.</u>	<u>Banaras (city), Uttar Pradesh.</u>
	prasiddh	famous
3 P:	<u>yahii kaašii-kii prasiddh wišwanaath-jii-kii galii hai.</u>	<u>This is the famous Vishwanath Gali of Banaras.</u>
	banaaras sac ki sac hai ki bhaarat sab-see puraanaa	Banaras (m) truth (m) that (conj) it is true that Bharat (India) oldest
4 W:	<u>kahiye panDit-jii, kyaa yee sac hai, ki banaaras bhaarat- kaa sab-see puraanaa šahar hai?</u>	<u>Tell me, pandit, is it true that Banaras is the oldest city in India?</u>
	yah praaciin kaal praaciin kaal-see hinduu tiirth tiirth sthaan	yee (formal) old, ancient age, period (m) since ancient times Hindu (m) pilgrimage (m) place of pilgrimage (m)
5 P:	<u>jii hāā, yah too praaciin kaal -see hii hindušš-kaa tiirth sthaan rahaa hai.</u>	<u>Yes, it's been a place of pilgrimage for the Hindus since ancient times.</u>

- |       |   |  |  |
|-------|---|--|--|
|       | <p>šuddh<br/>kaaraN</p>   |  | <p>pure<br/>reason (m)</p>   |
| 6 W:  | <p>aap too bahut šuddh hindii<br/>booltee hāī. is-kaa kyaa<br/>kaaraN hai?</p>              |  | <p><u>You speak a very pure Hindi. What<br/>is the reason for that?</u></p>                            |
|       | <p>kuch bhii nahīī</p>  |  | <p>none at all</p>   |
| 7 P:  | <p>kaaraN kuch bhii nahīī. kaašii<br/>-mēē too aisii hindii boolii<br/>hii jaatii hai.</p>  |  | <p><u>There is no special reason. This is<br/>the kind of Hindi that is spoken<br/>in Banaras.</u></p> |
|       | <p>aisaa lagtaa hai ki</p>  |  | <p>it appears as if</p>  |
| 8 W:  | <p>aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yee bahut<br/>puraanaa baazaar hai.</p>                             |  | <p><u>This seems to be a very old bazaar.</u></p>  |
|       | <p>utnaa...jitnaa ki<br/>nagar</p>  |  | <p>as...as<br/>city (m)</p>  |
| 9 P:  | <p>jii hāā, yah baazaar bhii utnaa<br/>hii puraanaa hai jitnaa ki<br/>yah nagar.</p>        |  | <p><u>This bazaar is as old as this city.</u></p>  |
|       | <p>tab<br/>tabhii too<br/>sākraa</p>  |  | <p>then (conj)<br/>that's why<br/>narrow</p>   |
| 10 W: | <p>acchaa, tabhii too yee galii<br/>itnii sākrii hai.</p>                                   |  | <p><u>Oh, that's why this lane is so narrow.</u></p>   |
|       | <p>wicaar<br/>meeraa wicaar hai ki<br/>phir bhii<br/>aaraam-see</p>                         |  | <p>belief, idea (m)<br/>I think that<br/>nevertheless<br/>with ease, comfortably</p>                   |
| 11 P: | <p>leekin meeraa wicaar hai, ki<br/>phir bhii is-mēē aaraam-see<br/>aap jaa saktii hāī.</p> |  | <p><u>But I think, nevertheless, you can<br/>walk through it quite comfortably.</u></p>                |
|       | <p>prakaar<br/>sab prakaar-kaa<br/>wastu</p>  |  | <p>kind, type (m)<br/>of all kinds<br/>thing, goods (f)</p>  |
| 12 P: | <p>is galii-mēē sab prakaar-kii<br/>wastuōō-kii dukaanēē hāī.</p>                           |  | <p><u>There are shops for every kind of<br/>merchandise in this lane.</u></p>                          |
|       | <p>yahīī<br/>yahīī kaašii-mēē</p>   |  | <p>right here<br/>right here in Banaras</p>  |
| 13 W: | <p>kyaa yee bartan yahīī kaašii<br/>-mēē bantee hāī?</p>                                    |  | <p><u>Are these utensils made here in<br/>Banaras?</u></p>   |

	adhik	many
	adhik-tar	mostly
	šeeš	rest, remaining
	māgaanaa	to send for
	baahar-see māgaanee jaatee hāī	are imported from outside
14 P:	<u>adhik-tar too yahīī bantee hāī.</u> <u>šeeš baahar-see māgaanee jaatee</u> <u>hāī.</u>	<u>Most of them are made here. The</u> <u>rest are imported from outside.</u>
	cappal	slipper (f)
	camRaa	leather
	camRaa lagaa hai	leather is used
15 W:	<u>yee cappalēē kis prakaar-kii</u> <u>hāī? in-mēē camRaa nahīī</u> <u>lagaa hai, kyaa?</u>	<u>What kinds of chapals are these?</u> <u>Isn't there any leather in them?</u>
	khaRaaūū	wooden sandal (m)
	keewal	only
	lakRii	wood
	wah	woo (formal)
16 P:	<u>un-koo khaRaaūū kahtee hāī.</u> <u>wee keewal lakRii-kee hii</u> <u>hootee hāī.</u>	<u>They are called kharaun. They're</u> <u>made entirely of wood.</u>
	baiThaa hai	is seated
17 W:	<u>aur joo aurat udhar baiThii</u> <u>hai, wah kyaa kar rahii hai.</u>	<u>The woman who is sitting over there,</u> <u>what is she doing?</u>
	buRhiyaa	old woman (f)
	šringaar	cosmetics (m)
	saamagrii	material, ingredients
18 P:	<u>wah buRhiyaa aurtōō-kee šringaar-</u> <u>kii saamagrii beec rahii hai.</u>	<u>That old woman is selling women's</u> <u>cosmetics.</u>
	phuul	flower (m)
	kis liyee	why, for what reason
19 W:	<u>yahāā phuul kis liyee biktee</u> <u>hāī?</u>	<u>Why do they sell flowers here?</u>
	caRhnaa	to climb (intr)
	caRhaanaa	to make an offering (trans)
20 P:	<u>loog mandir-mēē caRhaanee-kee</u> <u>liyee, yahāā-see phuul lee</u> <u>jaatee hāī.</u>	<u>In order to make an offering in the</u> <u>temple, the people take flowers</u> <u>from here.</u>

	dharm	religion, duty (m)
	dhaarmik	religious
	pustak	book (f)
21 P:	<u>yahāā dhaarmik pustakēē bik rahii hāī.</u>	<u>Here they are selling religious books.</u>
	bajnaa	to strike, sound (intr)
22 W:	<u>kyaa bajaa hai?</u>	<u>What time is it?</u>
23 P:	<u>caar bajnee-waalee hāī.</u>	<u>It is about to strike four.</u>
	waapas calaa jaaee	let's go back
	sajjan	gentleman (m)
	sajjan-see milnee jaanaa	to go to meet a gentleman
24 W:	<u>tab too waapas calaa jaaee, abhi eek aur sajjan-see milnee jaanaa hai.</u>	<u>Then let's go back; I'm supposed to meet someone.</u>

### Cultural Notes

As is the case with most centers of traditional Hindu worship, the temples of Banaras are surrounded by a thriving bazaar and a great variety of old style workshops. Here visitors may purchase gifts of flowers, sweets, or other foods to be offered at the temple. Some of the finest of Indian handicraft products are also produced here. Among these are the famous Banaras gold saris, copper articles, toys, and also many articles used by the traditional religious practitioners such as the wooden khaRaauū. The lanes in the inner bazaar are impassable to vehicular traffic and the colorful clothing of the many pedestrians, the flower shops and the many strange articles combine to make this bazaar one of the most interesting in India.

There are special groups of Brahmans, sometimes also called pandas, who cater to the needs of the many pilgrims and other visitors from all parts of India. They maintain regular relations with their clients in other regions, sometimes over a period of several generations. The guide in our conversation is probably a member of such a group; this is why he is addressed as 'panditji.'

Banaras is also famous as a center of modern Hindi literary activity. It is here that the modern Hindi literary prose style developed. Among the characteristics of this style are the many words of Sanskrit origin such as praaciin, adhik and the use of singular wah and yah and plural wee and yee. During the last decades this style has been spreading, at first in Eastern Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Madhya Pradesh, the areas closest to Banaras, but more recently also in the western portion of the Hindi area. It is now becoming more and more frequent in the everyday speech of the educated. It is this style that we refer to as śuddh hindii.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

Beginning with this unit, we provide lists of common stylistic alternants for the words employed in the conversations. Although the items are listed in separate Hindi and Urdu columns, it should be remembered that they may be used interchangeably in many contexts. This is especially the case with the Urdu examples, which quite often serve as informal alternants of their Hindi equivalents. Whenever an item is rare in conversation, it is marked 'formal' in parenthesis.

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
prasiddh	maʃhuur	famous
sthaan (m)	jagah (f)	place, location
praaciin, puraanaa	puraanaa	old, ancient
ʃuddh	saaf	good (of speech)
wicaar	khayaal	thought, idea
wastu (formal), saamaan	saamaan	goods
adhik	zyaadaa	much
adhik-tar	zyaadaa-tar	mostly
prakaar	kism	kind
pustak (f)	kitaab (f)	book
sajjan	saahab	gentleman
kaaraN (m)	wajah (f)	reason
ʃeeʃ (formal)	baaki	remaining
kaal	zamaanaa	time
yah, yee (sg)	yee	this
wah, woo (sg)	woo	that
yee (pl)	yee	these
wee, woo (pl)	woo	those

### 2. Directions

uttar	North	paʃcim	West
dakʃin	South	puurab	East

3. Related word pairs

sākraa  
dharm

narrow  
duty, religion

cauRaa  
dhaarmik

wide  
religious

4. Causatives

māāgnāa  
bajnaa

to ask for, beg  
to sound

māgaanaa  
bajaanaa

to send for something  
to play (instrument)

5. Additional vocabulary

bhaaśaa

language (f)



## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

#### A. Transformation drill

##### Instructor

Hindi is spoken in Banaras.

banaaras-mēē hindii boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
karaacii-mēē urduu boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
bambaii-mēē maraaThii boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
madraas-mēē tamil boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
landan-mēē angreezii boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
panjaab-mēē panjaabii boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
gujraat-mēē gujraatii boolii-hii jaatii hai.  
ruus-mēē ruusii boolii-hii jaatii hai.

##### Class

They speak Hindi in Banaras.

banaaras-mēē hindii booltee hāī.  
karaacii-mēē urduu booltee hāī.  
bambaii-mēē maraaThii booltee hāī.  
madraas-mēē tamil booltee hāī.  
landan-mēē angreezii booltee hāī.  
panjaab-mēē panjaabii booltee hāī.  
gujraat-mēē gujraatii booltee hāī.  
ruus-mēē ruusii booltee hāī.

#### B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What language do they speak in Banaras?

1st Student: Hindi is spoken in Banaras.

Instructor: banaaras-mēē kyaa bhaaṣaa booltee hāī.

1st Student: banaaras-mēē hindii boolii jaatii hai.

Instructor: karaacii-mēē kyaa bhaaṣaa booltee hāī.

2nd Student: karaacii-mēē urduu boolii jaatii hai.

Continue with the sentences in drill A.

### Pattern 2

#### A. Substitution-agreement drill

The others are imported from outside.

(ṢeeṢ) baahar-see māgaāee jaatee hāī.

saaRii

yah kapRaa

yahāā-kee phuul

lakRii

juutee-kee liyee camRaa

khaRaaṢṢ-kee liyee lakRii

Ṣringaar-kii saamagrii

## B. Double substitution-agreement drill

(camRee-kii cappel)	udhar-see	(māgaaii)	jaatii hai.
		laayaa	
hamaaree	phuul		
		deekhaa	
lakRii			
		nikaalaa	
sab prakaar-kii	wastuēē		
		uThaayaa	

## C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Where are brass utensils made?  
 1st Student: They are made in Jaipur.

Instructor: piital-kee bartan kahāā banaaee jaatee hāī.  
 1st Student: jaipuur-mēē banaaee jaatee hāī.

Instructor: cappelēē kahāā-see māgaaii jaatii hāī.  
 2nd Student: baahar-see māgaaii jaatii hāī.

Continue with the questions below. Any reasonable answer is acceptable.

Instructor

khaRaauū kahāā beecēe jaatee hāī.  
 urduu kahāā boolii jaatii hai.  
 phuul kahāā caRhaaee jaatee hāī.  
 juutee kis ciiz-kee banaaee jaatee hāī.  
 dhaarmik pustakēē kahāā beecii jaatii hāī.  
 namaaz kahāā paRhii jaatii hai.  
 hindii kahāā paRhaaii jaatii hai.  
 chooTii chooTii dukaanōō-mēē kyaa ciiz beecii jaatii hai.  
 siikrii-mēē kyaa dikhaayaa jaataa hai.  
 gaarii-kee piichee kyaa rakhaa jaataa hai.

## Pattern 3

## A. Substitution-agreement drill

The stores here are the oldest stores in India.

yañāā-kii (dukaanēē) bhaarat-kii sab-see puraaniī dukaanēē hāī.  
                   galii  
                   saRak  
                   mandir  
                   phuul  
                   pustakēē  
                   kilaā

B. Double substitution-agreement drill

This temple is the highest here.

(yah mandir) yahāā-kaa sab-see (ũũcaa) hai.  
wah masjid

is gāāw kii galiyāā

cauRii

banaarsii saaRiyāā

mašhuur

wee khilaunee

sastii

wah lakRii

mahāgii

C. Individual substitution-agreement-selection drill

In this variant of the substitution-agreement drill, the second item in parenthesis must be selected so as to fit the meaning of the first substitution at the beginning of the sentence.

The apple is the best fruit in the North.

(seeb) uttar-kaa sab-see acchaa (phal) hai.  
rasgullaa miThaaii

duun ekspres

cāādnii cauk

galee milnaa

salaam

iid

khaRaaũũ

Pattern 4

A. Substitution drill

That village is older than Lucknow.

wahii gāāw lakhnauu-see (puraanaa) hai.

chooTaa

prasiddh

ũũcaa

baRaa

niicaa

sundar

B. Substitution-agreement drill

Food is cheaper than clothes.

(khaanaa) kapRee-see sastaa hai.

miThaaii

wee phuul

naii cappalēē

khilaunee

pustakēē

yah juutaa

## C. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Is Delhi older than Banaras?

kyaa dillii banaaras-see puraani hai?  
 kyaa masjid buland darwaazee-see ūūcii hai?  
 kyaa naii saRak wiśwanaath galii-see cauRii hai?  
 kyaa piital-kee bartan miTTii-kee bartanōō-see saste hāī?  
 kyaa jhoolaa bakas-see bhaarii hai?  
 kyaa urduu hindii-see muškil hai?  
 kyaa dillii lakhnauu-see chooTii hai?  
 kyaa paidal jaanaa tãāgee-mēē jaanee-see aasaan hai?  
 kyaa gāāw-waalee šahar-waalōō-see amiir hāī?  
 kyaa galee milnaa namaste kahnee-see acchaa hai?  
 kyaa uupar caRhnaa nicee jaanee-see aasaan hai?  
 kyaa angreezii boolnaa hindii boolnee-see acchaa hai?

Class

No, Banaras is older than Delhi.

nahīī, banaaras dillii-see puuraanaa hai.  
 nahīī, buland darwaazaa masjid-see ūūcaa hai.  
 nahīī, wiśwanaath galii naii saRak-see cauRii hai.  
 etc.

## Pattern 5

## A. Substitution-agreement drill

The bazaar is as old as this city.

(baazaar) utnaa hii puraanaa hai jitnaa ki yah nagar.  
 wiśwanaath-jii-kii galii  
 hawaa mahal  
 buland darwaazaa  
 aisee bartan  
 wahii bastiyāā  
 wah wastu  
 yahāā-kii dukaanēē

## B. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Is this shirt more expensive than the blouse?

kyaa yah kamiiz blaaaz-see mahāgii hai?  
 kyaa banaarsii saaRiyāā madraasii saaRiyōō-see sundar hāī?  
 kyaa meeraa bakas aap-kec bakas-see bhaarii hai?  
 kyaa kilaa masjid-see puraanaa hai?  
 kyaa ciTTii likhnaa kitaab paRhnee-see muškil hai?  
 kyaa yee galiyāā duusrii galiyōō-see sākrii hāī?  
 kyaa gaaRii-mēē jaanaa mooTar-mēē jaanee-see sastaa hai?  
 kyaa galee milnaa namaste kahnee-see acchaa riwaaz hai?  
 kyaa phuul caRhaanaa namaaz paRhnee-see acchaa hai?  
 kyaa yah darwaazaa duusree darwaazōō-see cauRaa hai?  
 kyaa yah saRak duusrii saRkōō-see lambii hai?  
 kyaa jaaliyāā farš-see khuubsuurat hāī?

### Class

This shirt is just as expensive as the blouse.

yah blaauz utnii mahāgii hai jitnii ki yah kamiiz.  
aap-kaa bakas utnaa bhaarii hai jitnaa ki meeraa bakas.  
mooTar-mēē jaanaa utnaa sastaa hai jitnaa ki gaaRii-mēē jaanaa.  
etc.

### C. Individual conversational response drill

Answer using pattern three, four or five depending on the question.

Instructor: Is Vishvanath Gali older than Nai Sarak?

1st Student: Yes, it's older than Nai Sarak.

Instructor: kyaa wiśwanaath-jii-kii galii naii saRak-see puraanii hai?

1st Student: jii hāā, woo naii sáRak-see puraanii hai.

Instructor: kyaa hindii angreezii-see sundar hai?

2nd Student: hindii utnii sundar hai jitnii-ki angreezii.

Instructor: kyaa kaaśii bahut puraanaa śahar hai?

3rd Student: kaaśii bhaarat-kaa sab-see puraanaa śahar hai.

### Instructor

kyaa saahab kulii-see gariib hai?

kyaa wiśwanaath-jii-kii galii prasiddh hai?

kyaa bistar bakas-see bhaarii hai?

kyaa eek rupayaa soolah aanee-see zyaadaa hai?

kyaa tāāgaa rikśee-see halkaa hai?

kyaa tiis minaaT aadhee ghanTee-see zyaadaa samay hai?

kyaa miTTii-kaa bartan lakRii-kee bartan-see mahāgaa hai?

kyaa kalkattaa chooTaa śahar hai?

kyaa phuul caRhaanaa namaaz paRhnee-see acchaa riwaaz hai?

kyaa bistar jhoolee-see halkaa hai?

kyaa jaipuur-kee bartan banaaras-kee bartanōō-see acchee hāī?

kyaa hindii likhnaa hindii boolnee-see muśkil hai?

kyaa duun ekspres acchii gaaRii hai?

kyaa rikśaa gaaRii-see mahāgaa hai?

### Pattern 6

#### A. Substitution drill

I think that that woman is selling flowers.

(meeraa) khayaal hai, ki wah aurat phuul beec rahii hai.

saahab-kaa

wideeśii-kaa

us-kaa

un loogōō-kaa

panDit-jii-kaa

hamaaraa

B. Substitution drill

He thought that all kinds of things would be available.

(us-kaa) wicaar thaa, ki sab prakaaar-kii wastuẽẽ milẽẽgii.

panDit-kaa

un-kaa

buRhiyaa-kaa

gããw-kee rahnee-waalõõ-kaa

jawaanõõ-kaa

puraanee zamaanee-kee loogõõ-kaa

tamaasaa deekhnee-waalõõ-kaa

C. Repeat drill A, substituting wicaar for khayaal, and drill B, substituting khayaal for wicaar.

D. Individual conversational response

wideešii: It seems that this is the old bazaar.

panDit: No, I think it is the new bazaar.

wideešii: aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yah puraanaa baazaar hai.

panDit: nahĩĩ, meeraa khayaal hai, ki yah nayaa baazaar hai.

wideešii: aisaa lagtaa hai, ki aap urduu bool rahee hãĩ.

panDit: nahĩĩ, meeraa khayaal hai, ki mãĩ hindii bool rahaa hũũ.

Give any reasonable negative answer.

wideešii

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki ham is galii-mẽẽ nahĩĩ jaa saktee hãĩ.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki wah buRhiyaa phuul beec rahii hai.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki miTTii-kee bartan mahãgee hãĩ.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yahãã bahut kam ciizẽẽ milẽẽgii.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki loog yee phuul ghar lee jaatee hãĩ.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yahãã-kii hindii acchii nahĩĩ hai.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki siikrii kaašii-see puraanaa hai.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki caar bajnee-waalee hãĩ.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki kaašii-mẽẽ bartan nahĩĩ bantee.

aisaa lagtaa hai, ki yahãã bahut kam loog aatee hãĩ.

E. Chain drill

The instructor makes a statement and asks the first student's opinion. The first student answers and then makes another statement, asking the second student's opinion about it and so on.

Instructor: I think that they make brass vessels in Banaras, what does Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ think?

1st Student: I think that's right. I think they don't wear cappals in the temple, what does Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ think?

Instructor: meeraa khayaal hai, ki kaašii-mẽẽ piital-kee bartan bantee hãĩ. (keen)-saahab-kaa kyaa khayaal hai?

keen saahab: meeraa khayaal hai, ki yee sac hai. meeraa khayaal hai ki kaašii bahut praaciin hai, (roo) saahab-kaa kyaa khayaal hai?

roo saahab: meeraa khayaal hai, ki yee sac nahĩĩ. meeraa khayaal hai, ki cappalẽẽ camRee-kii hootii hãĩ, (lii) saahab-kaa kyaa khayaal hai?

Go on with the following:

lakRii-kii cappal-koo khaRaaũũ kahtee hãĩ.  
kaašii-měě aurtõõ-kii saamagrii nahĩĩ biktii.  
loog mandir-měě phuul caRhaatee hãĩ.  
hindustaan-měě bahut tiirth sthaan hãĩ.  
khaanee-kee pahlee haath mũh dhoonaa caahiyee.  
banaaras-měě šuddh hindii nahĩĩ booltee.  
siikrii banaaras-see prasiddh hai.  
naili saRak bahut sãkrii hai.  
namastee kahnaa acchaa riwaaz hai.  
gããw-měě sab prakaar-kii wastuěě miltii hãĩ.  
diwaarõõ-par bahut khuubsuurat kaam banaa hai.  
akbar apnee waziirõõ-kee nicee baiThtaa thaa.  
amriikaa-měě bahut masjiděě hootii hãĩ.  
naili bastiyõõ-měě makaan DhũũDhnaa aasaan hai.  
steešan-par bahut kulii milěěgee.

#### Pattern 7

##### A. Stylistic alternation drill

The purpose of this drill is to provide practice in the use of stylistic alternants. The drill is carried out as follows. Step 1: the instructor pronounces the word or phrase to be replaced and then the entire sentence in which it occurs; the class repeats the sentence. Step 2: the instructor gives the sentence in its alternate form; the class repeats. Step 3: the instructor pronounces the sentence in its original form; the class gives the stylistic alternant.

Instructor: This is the famous Vishvanath Gali in Banaras.

Instructor: prasiddh  
yahii kaašii-kii (prasiddh) wišwanaath-jii-kii galii hai.

Class: yahii kaašii-kii mašhuur wišwanaath-jii-kii galii hai.

Instructor: kism  
yahãã bahut kism-kee saamaan miltee hãĩ.

Class: yahãã bahut prakaar-kee saamaan miltee hãĩ.

#### Instructor

udhar sab (wastuõõ-kii) dukaaněě hãĩ.  
galii-měě (pustakěě) bik rahii hãĩ.  
abhi eek aur (saahab)-see milnaa hai.  
udhar bahut (adhik) loog thee.  
(šeeš) baad-měě milěěgee.  
banaaras bhaarat-kaa sab-see (praaciin sthaan) hai.  
wah makaan bahut (khuubsuurat) lagtaa hai.  
aap (šuddh) hindii booltee hãĩ.  
wah šahar (praaciin kaal-see) hii (mašhuur) hai.  
(adhik-tar) hinduu loog yahãã aatee hãĩ.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

bhaarat-kee sab-see praaciin nagar-kaa naam kyaa hai.  
kaašii-kii prasiddh galii kaun-sii hai.  
šuddh hindii kahāā boolii jaatii hai.  
banaaras-kii galiyāā kyōō sākrii hāī.  
kyaa sākrii galii-mēē-see loog aaraam-see jaa saktee hāī?  
hinduōō-kaa tiirth sthaan kaun-saa hai.  
bartan kahāā banaaee jaatee hāī.  
kyaa khaRaaūū camRee-see bantee hāī?  
šringaar-kii saamagrii kahāā bik rahii hai.  
loog phuul kyōō khariidtee hāī.  
kyaa loog masjid-mēē phuul caRhaatee hāī?  
dhaarmik pustakēē kahāā bik rahii hāī.  
banaaras aap-koo kaisaa lagaa.

### Group 2

waraaNasii-kaa duusraa naam kyaa hai.  
praaciin kaal-see hii kaašii hinduōō-kaa kyaa rahaa hai.  
kyaa wideešii hindii bool saktee hāī?  
banaaras-kee loog kaisii hindii booltee hāī.  
kyaa banaaras-kii galiyāā bahut cauRii hāī?  
kaašii-mēē kyaa bartan bhii bantee hāī.  
lakRii-kii cappalōō-koo kyaa kahtee hāī.  
buuRhii aurat-koo kyaa kahtee hāī.  
joo aurat galii-mēē baiTh rahii thii, wah kyaa kar rahii thii.  
mandir-mēē loog kyaa caRhaatee hāī.  
galii-mēē kaisii pustakēē bik rahii hāī.  
saahab-koo kahāā jaanaa thaa.



## Situational Response

### panDit:

kyaa aap-nee kabhi khaRaaũũ deekhee hãĩ?  
kyaa yah sac hai, ki aap-kee deẽ-mẽẽ tiirth sthaan nahĩĩ hãĩ?  
aap-koo banaaras-see kyaa wastuẽẽ khariidni hãĩ.  
aap mandir-mẽẽ caRhaanee-kee liyee phuul khariidẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap is gali-mẽẽ aaraam-see jaa saktee hãĩ?  
aap-nee bhaarat-mẽẽ aur kis prasiddh sthaan-koo deekhaa hai.  
kyaa aap-kee puraanee nagarõõ-mẽẽ bhii sãkrii galiyãã hãĩ?  
aap-nee itni acchi hindi boolni kahãã siikhii.  
kyaa aap meerii hindi samajh saktee hãĩ?  
kyaa aap aur bhii galiyãã deekhẽẽgee?  
aap-koo kis sajjan-see milnaa hai.  
aap is gali-mẽẽ kaun kaun-sii dukaanẽẽ deekhẽẽgee.

### wideẽĩĩ:

kyaa kaaĩĩ bhaarat-kaa sab-see praaciin nagar hai?  
yah nagar itnaa prasiddh kyõõ hai.  
aap ũuddh hindi booltee hãĩ, is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai.  
wiřwanaath-jii-kii gali-mẽẽ kyaa ciizẽẽ miltii hãĩ.  
khaRaaũũ kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.  
kyaa khilaunee bhii miltee hãĩ, kaaĩĩ mẽẽ?  
kyaa musalmaan bhii phuul caRhaatee hãĩ, mandir-mẽẽ?  
yahãã řringaar-kii saamagrii kis liyee beectee hãĩ.  
loog dukaan-see phuul kyõõ khariid rahee hãĩ.  
kyaa yah sac hai, ki banaaras siikrii-see praaciin hai?  
loog kis liyee banaaras jaatee hãĩ.  
aap urdu nahĩĩ boõltee, is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai.

## Review Conversations

### baazaar-mēē

1. A: yee kis prakaar-kee bartan hāī.  
B: piital-kee bartan saahab. yee paanii rakhnee-kee liyee hāī.  
A: kyaa yee yahīī bantee hāī?  
B: kuch yahīī dukaan-mēē banaaee jaatee hāī, aur kuch baahar-see māgaai.  
jaatee hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about chapals, saris, flowers, etc.

2. A: yee lakRii-kii cappalēē kis liyee hāī.  
B: pahannee-kee liyee hāī.  
A: un-koo kaun loog pahantee hāī.  
B: panDit us-koo pahantee hāī, mandir-mēē aur ghar-par.  
A: kyaa woo camRaa nahīī pahantee hāī?  
B: nahīī, camRaa nahīī pahan saktee hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about toys, saris and other articles of clothing.

3. A: is baazaar-kii kyaa ciiz maṣhuur hai.  
B: kaaṣii-kii saaRiyāā yahāā-kii khaas ciizēē hāī.  
A: aap-nee yahāā-kii saaRiyāā kabhi nahīī deekhiī?  
A: hāā, deekhiī hāī. woo saarii duniyāā-mēē maṣhuur hāī.  
B: kyaa aap-kee deēṣ-mēē bhii aisiī saaRiyāā hootii hāī?  
A: hootii hāī, leekin hindustaan-see māgaai jaatii hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about brass vessels, chapals, sweets, etc.

### idhar udhar-kii baat-ciit

4. A: kahiye saahab, kyaa aap kal baahar gae thee?  
B: jii hāā. kaaṣii gayaa thaa.  
A: too wahāā aap-nee kyaa deekhaa. wiṣwanaath-jii-kaa mandir too zaruur deekhaa hoogaa.  
B: zaruur deekhaa. bahut puraanee Dhang-kaa sthaan hai.  
A: aap-koo kaisaa lagaa. galiyāā too bahut sākrii hāī.  
B: hāā, leekin phir bhii loog aaraam-see aa jaa saktee hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about trips to Sikri, Agra and Jaipur.

5. A: aap too bahut suddh hindii booltee hāī. aap-nee kahāā siikhii.  
 B: māī-nee amriikaa-mēē siikhii.  
 A: kyaa amriikaa-mēē hindii paRhaaii jaatii hai?  
 B: zaruur, ab too bahut loog hindii siikhnee lagee hāī.  
 A: kyaa woo paRhnaa bhii siikhtee hāī?  
 B: hāā, boolnaa aur paRhnaa doonōō siikhtee hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about other Indian languages.

6. A: aap-koo wiśwanaath galii kaisii lagii.  
 B: bahut acchii lagii.  
 A: kaisii jagah hai?  
 B: bahut sākrii hai, aur bahut puraanee Dhang-kii dukaanēē hāī.  
 A: wahāā kyaa ciizēē biktii hāī.  
 B: sab prakaar-kii wastuēē biktii hāī. kapRee, phuul, bartan, khilaunee, aurtōō-kee śringaar-kii saamagrii, sab.

Improvise similar conversations about other trips.

7. A: bataaiyee, bhaarat-kaa sab-see prasiddh tiirth sthaan kaun-saa hai.  
 B: kaaśii hai.  
 A: woo kahāā hai, uttar-mēē yaa dakśiN-mēē.  
 B: uttar-mēē. uttar pradeś-kee puurab-mēē.  
 A: kyaa dakśiN-mēē bhii tiirth sthaan hāī?  
 B: madraas aur maisuur-mēē bahut hāī.

Improvise similar conversations about famous forts, palaces, temples, etc.

8. A: joo aadmiī udhar baiThaa hai, woo kyaa kar rahaa hai.  
 B: woo phuul beec rahaa hai.  
 A: loog kis-kee liyee phuul leetee hāī.  
 B: mandir-mēē caRhaanee-kee liyee.  
 A: kyaa aap-kee dees-mēē aisaa riwaaz nahīī hootaa?  
 B: nahīī, hamaaree dees-mēē aisaa riwaaz nahīī hai.

Improvise similar conversation about people sitting on the sidewalk, selling vegetables, cloth, religious books. Be sure to use the joo construction in your first sentence.

9. Improvise longer conversations about trips to Sikri, Delhi and other places covered in previous conversations.

Unit V Part B

Conversation

1 doostōō-kee saath, hazrat ganj-mēē.

2 lakhnauu, uttar pradeē-kii raajdhani.

---

3 wideēī: maaf kiijiye, mujhee kuch deer hoo gaii.

4 aap-koo zyaadaa intizaar too nahī karna paRa?

5 jain saahab: jii nahī, ham loog bhii abhii abhii pahūcee hāī.

6 kamlaa deewii: sinemaa šurū hoonee-mēē too abhii aadhaa ghanTaa baakii hai.  
caliye tab-tak kaafii pii jaaee.

---

7 wideēī: kyaa kaafii haaus caliyeegaa? māī-nee us-kii baRii taariif  
sunii hai.

8 kamlaa deewii: hāā, bahut puraanaa hai. aazaadii-kee pahlee us-mēē  
raašTriiy kaary kartaaōō-kii baiThakēē hootii thīī.

9 jain saahab: sinemaa too kaafii haaus-kee paas-hii hai.

---

10 wideēī: suniye, aazaadii-kee baad bhii in dukaanōō-par angreezii-mēē  
hii boorD lagee hāī?

11 jain saahab: kuch loogōō-nee too hindii-mēē badal diyaa hai. aur  
kuch-nee hindii aur angreezii doonōō-mēē lagaa rakhaa hai.

12 kamlaa deewii: deekhiye, saamnee-kee boorD-par eek taraf hindii-mēē  
likhaa hai, duusrii taraf urduu-mēē aur biic-mēē  
angreezii-mēē.

13 jain saahab: naagrii lipi-mēē likhaa hai, yuu pii gawarnment hainDii kraifT.

14 wideēī: aap-nee too angreezii dii hindii-kee akšarōō-mēē kyaa likhaa hai?

15 jain saahab: deew naagrii lipi-mēē bhii angreezii-kee hii šabd likhee  
hāī. waisee ham loog isee khaadii bhanDaar kahtee hāī.

16 kamlaa deewii: kaafii haaus aa gayaa. caliye na, thooRii kaafii pii  
hii lēē.

---

- 17 jain saahab: aap-koo kyaa pasand hai, kaafii yaa kooii šarbat? ham niibuu-kaa šarbat piyēēgee. aaj dhuup baRii teez hai.
- 18 wideešii: māl kaafii lūūgii, us-koo kaahiye ki duudh na Daal dee.
- 19 jain saahab: sunoo, eek kaafii, binaa duudh, aur doo niibuu-kaa šarbat, aur eek pleet namkiin.
- 20 bairaa: bahut acchaa, abhii laayaa.
- 

- 21 wideešii: is kaafii haaus-mēē ab zyaadaa loog nahī aatee kyaa?
- 22 kamlaa deewi: aatee kyōō nahī, šaam hootē hootē kaafii loog aa jaatee hāī.
- 23 jain saahab: khaas taur-par widyaarthii yahā har šaam-koo ganjing karnee aatee hāī.
- 24 wideešii: ganjing, yee too baRaa ajiib lafz hai.
- 25 kamlaa deewi: Thiik pataa nahī, yee lakhnauu-kee widyaarthiyōō-kii bhaašaa hai.
- 26 jain saahab: ab calnaa caahiye, kahī kheel šurua na hoo jaaee.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

W: wideešii  
J: jain saahab  
K: kamlāa deewii (Mrs. Jain)  
B: bairaa

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | ganj   | marketplace (m)  |
|      | hazrat ganj  | Hazrat Ganj (m)  |
| 1    | <u>doostōō-kee saath, hazrat ganj-mēē.</u>   | <u>With friends in Hazrat Ganj.</u>  |
|      | lakhnauu   | Lucknow (city) (m)   |
| 2    | <u>lakhnauu, uttar pradeeš-kii raajdhāanii.</u>  | <u>Lucknow, the capital of Uttar Pradesh.</u>  |
|      | mujhee deer hai.   | I am late.   |
| 3 W: | <u>maaf kiijiyee, mujhee kuch deer hoo gaii.</u>   | <u>Excuse me, I'm a little late.</u>   |
| 4 W: | <u>aap-koo zyaadaa intizaar too nahīī karnāa paRaa?</u>  | <u>You didn't have to wait too long, did you?</u>  |
|      | abhi abhi  | right now, just (now)  |
| 5 J: | <u>jii nahīī, ham loog bhi abhi abhi pahūcee hāī.</u>  | <u>Not at all, we just arrived ourselves.</u>  |
|      | sinemaa  | movie, cinema  |
|      | aadhaa   | half   |
|      | aadhaa ghanTaa baakii hai  | a half hour is left  |
|      | kaafii   | coffee   |
|      | kaafii pii jaaee   | let coffee be drunk  |
| 6 K: | <u>sinemaa šurūu hoonee-mēē too abhi aadhaa ghanTaa baakii hai. caliye tab-tak kaafii pii jaaee.</u> | <u>The movie doesn't begin for another half hour. Let's go and get some coffee before it starts.</u> |
|      | kaafii haaus   | coffee house (m)   |
|      | taariif  | praise (f)   |
|      | caliyeegaa   | be so kind as to go (very polite)  |
| 7 W: | <u>kyaa kaafii haaus caliyeegaa? māī-nee us-kii baRii taariif sunii hai.</u>                         | <u>Shall we go to the Coffee House? I've heard a lot about it.</u>                                   |

aazaadii	freedom
raaṣṭriiy	national
kaary	work (m)
kaary kartaa	worker (m)
baiṭhak	meeting, sitting (f)
8 K: <u>hāṁ, bahut puraanaa hai.</u> <u>aazaadii-kee pahlee us-mēṁ</u> <u>raaṣṭriiy kaary kartaaṁ-kii</u> <u>baiṭhakēṁ hootii thī.</u>	<u>Yes, it's very old. Before independence</u> <u>the National Movement Workers used</u> <u>to meet there.</u>
-kee paas hii	very near
9 J: <u>sinemaa too kaafii haaus-kee</u> <u>paas hii hai.</u>	<u>The movie is very close to the</u> <u>Coffee House.</u>
boorD	signboard (m)
10 W: <u>suniyee, aazaadii-kee baad bhi</u> <u>in dukaanṁ-par angreezii-mēṁ</u> <u>hii boorD lagee hā?</u>	<u>Say, even after independence the</u> <u>signs on these shops are still in</u> <u>English.</u>
badalnaa	to change
11 J: <u>kuch loogṁ-nee too hindii-mēṁ</u> <u>badal diyaa hai. aur kuch-nee</u> <u>hindii aur angreezii doonṁ-</u> <u>mēṁ lagaa rakhaa hai.</u>	<u>Some people have changed to Hindi,</u> <u>while others keep them in both</u> <u>Hindi and English.</u>
eek taraf	on one side
duusrii taraf	on the other side
12 K: <u>deekhiyee, saamnee-kee boorD-</u> <u>par eek taraf hindii-mēṁ</u> <u>likhaa hai, duusrii taraf</u> <u>urduu-mēṁ aur biic-mēṁ</u> <u>angreezii-mēṁ.</u>	<u>Look, that sign ahead of us has Hindi</u> <u>on one side, Urdu on the other,</u> <u>and English in the middle.</u>
naagrii	Devanagari
lipi	script (f)
yuu pii gawarnment hainDii kraifT	U. P. government handicraft
13 J: <u>naagrii lipi-mēṁ likhaa hai,</u> <u>yuu pii gawarnment hainDii</u> <u>kraifT.</u>	<u>U. P. Government Handicraft is</u> <u>written in Devanagri script.</u>
akṣar	a letter of the alphabet, syllable (m)
14 W: <u>aap-nee too angreezii dii, hindii-</u> <u>kee akṣarṁ-mēṁ kyaa likhaa hai?</u>	<u>You gave me the English, but what</u> <u>do the Hindi letters say?</u>

deew naagrii	Devanagari
šabd	word (m)
waisee	ordinarily, in that way
khaadii	handspun cloth
bhanDaar	storehouse
15 J: <u>deew naagrii lipi-mēē bhii</u> <u>angreezii-kee hii šabd likhee</u> <u>hāī. waisee ham loog isee</u> <u>khaadii bhanDaar kahtee hāī.</u>	<u>The same English words are written</u> <u>in Devanagari script. Ordinarily</u> <u>we call this place Khadi Emporium.</u>
caliyee na	go ahead
16 K: <u>kaafii haaus aa gayaa. caliyee</u> <u>na, thoorii kaafii pii hii lēē.</u>	<u>Here's the Coffee House. Come on.</u> <u>let's have some coffee.</u>
šarbat	soft drink (m)
niibuu	lemon (m)
teez	fast, strong
17 J: <u>aap-koo kyaa pasand hai, kaafii</u> <u>yaa kooii šarbat? ham niibuu-</u> <u>kaa šarbat piyēēgee, aaj dhuup</u> <u>baRii teez hai.</u>	<u>Coffee or a soft drink? We'll</u> <u>have some lemonade, the sun's</u> <u>pretty hot today.</u>
Daalnaa	insert, pour
Daal deenaa	put in, pour in
duudh	milk (m)
18 W: <u>māī kaafii lūūgii, magar us-koo</u> <u>kahiye, ki duudh na Daal dee.</u>	<u>I'll have coffee, but please tell</u> <u>him not to put milk in it.</u>
binaa	without (adv)
binaa duudh	without milk
pleeT	plate (m)
namak	salt (m)
namkiin	any salted snack food (m)
19 J: <u>sunoo, eek kaafii, binaa duudh,</u> <u>doo niibuu-kaa šarbat, aur</u> <u>eek pleeT namkiin.</u>	<u>One coffee without milk, two</u> <u>lemonades, and a plate of namkin.</u>
20 B: <u>bahut acchaa, abhi laayaa.</u>	<u>O.K., I'm bringing it this minute.</u>
21 W: <u>is kaafii haaus-mēē ab zyaadaa</u> <u>loog nahīī aatee kyaa?</u>	<u>Don't many people come to this</u> <u>Coffee House these days?</u>
šaam hootēe hootēe	during the late afternoon
22 K: <u>aatee kyōō nahīī, šaam hootēe</u> <u>hootēe kaafii loog aa jaatee</u> <u>hāī.</u>	<u>Why shouldn't they come? Many people</u> <u>come here during the late</u> <u>afternoon.</u>



khaas taur-par  
ganjing

especially  
walking in Hazrat Ganj,  
"ganjing" (colloquial)

23 J: khaas taur-par widyaarthii yahāā  
har šaam-koo ganjing karnee  
aatee hāī.

Students especially come here every  
evening to go 'ganjing.'

ajiib  
lafz

strange  
word (m)

24 W: ganjing, yee too baRaa ajiib  
lafz hai.

Ganjing---what a strange word.

Thiik pataa nahīī  
bhaašaa

no exact knowledge  
language (f)

25 K: Thiik pataa nahīī, yee lakhnauu-  
kee widyaarthi-yōō-kii bhaašaa hai.

I'm not quite sure, that's the way  
Lucknow students talk.

kahīī  
kheel  
kahīī kheel šuruu na  
hoo jaaee

somehow, somewhere  
play, game (f)  
lest the show start

26 J: ab calnaa caahiye, kahīī kheel  
šuruu na hoo jaaee.

We ought to go now, or the show  
will start.

## Cultural Notes

Lucknow, the former capital of the Nawabs of Oudh, is now a modern, bustling city and the capital of the largest state of North India, Uttar Pradesh. Its political life, its university, one of the best-known in North India, and its accessibility to the industrial complex of near-by Kanpur lend it an urbanity and cosmopolitan air second only to those of New Delhi, Calcutta or Bombay. The heart of the modern city of Lucknow is Hazrat Ganj, where most of the bigger western-style stores, the theaters, and coffee houses are located. A favorite pastime for college students and young couples in Lucknow is an evening stroll down Hazrat Ganj to see the latest store window displays and a visit to a coffee house.

Despite its urbane air, Hazrat Ganj preserves evidence of the meeting and mixing of three cultural traditions in store fronts and signboards. Side by side are found signs in English, modern Hindi, and the more traditional Urdu, for Lucknow is an important literary and publishing center in both Hindi and Urdu. Urdu continues to flourish in Lucknow and even the tonga-drivers are said to speak quite respectable Urdu. The coffee houses take their place in this intellectual activity, for especially during the Independence movement and after they became famous in North India as the locale of the latest political discussion and of avant-garde literary trends.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
kaary (formal)	kaar	work, vocation
šabd	lafz	word
bhaašaa	zabaan	language
wišeeš	khaas	special
wišeeš prakaar-see	khaas taur-par	especially
widyarthii	taalib ilm	student
raašTriiy (formal)	sarkaarii	governmental

### 2. -gaa request forms

-gaa may be added to -iyee request forms to lend the request an air of extra politeness. The -gaa suffix does not change in these forms.

kaafii haaus caliyeegaa.

Shall we go to the coffee house.

maaf kiijiyeegaa.

Please excuse me.

### 3. Related pairs

aazaadii	freedom	aazaad	free
baiThnaa	to sit	baiThak	meeting, meeting room
namkiin	salted snack	namak	salt
badalnaa	to change	badlaanaa	to have (something) changed

### 4. Additional foods

ciinii	sugar
duudh	milk
caay	tea

### 5. Time

doo bajee hāī.

It's two o'clock.

doo baj-kar biis hāī.

It's twenty after two.

doo baj-kar pacciis hāī.

It's twenty-five after two.

tiin bajnee-měē biis hāī.

It's twenty to three.

tiin bajnee-měē das mināt hāī.

It's ten minutes to three.

## Grammar Drills

## Pattern 1

## A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

You didn't have to wait, did you?

aap-koo intizaar too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 kulii-koo itnaa kaam too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 saahab-koo jaldii too nahīī karnii paRii.  
 un-koo kheel too nahīī sūruu karnaa paRaa.  
 yaatrii-koo khiRkii too nahīī band karnii paRii.  
 akbar-koo raaniyōō-kaa intizaam too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 un-koo kheel too nahīī khatam karnaa paRaa.  
 aap-koo caay too nahīī piinii paRii.  
 saahab-koo kulii-kii madad too nahīī karnii paRii.  
 bairee-koo khaanee-kaa intizaam too nahīī karnaa paRaa.

Class

No, we don't think we had to wait.

nahīī, hamaaraa khayaal hai, ki intizaar nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 nahīī, hamaaraa khayaal hai, ki kulii-koo itnaa kaam nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 etc.

## B. Repeat drill A with positive answers.

Instructor

You didn't have to wait, did you?

aap-koo intizaar too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 kulii-koo itnaa kaam too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
 etc.

Class

We think we had to wait quite a bit.

hamaaraa khayaal hai, ki bahut intizaar karnaa paRaa.  
 hamaaraa khayaal hai, ki kulii-koo bahut kaam karnaa paRaa.  
 etc.

## Pattern 2

### A. Substitution drill

The show doesn't begin for another half hour.

(kheel ṣurū hoonee-mēē) aadhaa ghanTaa baakii hai.

gaaRii aanee-mēē

kaafii haaus khulnee-mēē

udhar pahūcnee-mēē

mooTar jaanee-mēē

darwaazaa khulaa hoonee-mēē

ḱilaa band hoonee-mēē

ḱamiiz taiyaar hoonee-mēē

### B. Conversational response drill

#### Instructor

How much time is left until the train arrives?

gaaRii pahūcnee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

mooTar jaanee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

paisaa milnee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

kheel ṣurū hoonee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

namaaz ḱhatam hoonee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

loogōō-kee kaafii haaus aanee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

yee kaam ḱhatam hoonee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

mandir-tak pahūcnee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

#### Class

Not much time; it'll only be five minutes 'til the train comes.

bahut deer nahīī, gaaRii pahūcnee-mēē keewal pāāc mināT rahēēgee.

bahut deer nahīī, mooTar jaanee-mēē keewal das mināT rahēēgee.

bahut deer nahīī, paisaa milnee-mēē keewal pandrah mināT rahēēgee.

Continue increasing the time interval by five minutes each time.

### C. Chain Drill

Instructor: It's five o'clock now. The movie starts at six.

1st Student: Then how long do we have left 'til the movie starts?

2nd Student: Anyhow we have one hour left.

Instructor: ab too pāāc bajee hāī. sinemaa chah bajee ṣurū hootaa hai.

1st Student: too sinemaa ṣurū hoonee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

2nd Student: phir bhii eek ghanTaa baakii raheegaa.

Instructor: saarhee pāāc hāī. chah bajee kaafii haaus khuleegaa.

1st Student: too kaafii haaus khulnee-mēē kitnii deer raheegii.

2nd Student: phir bhii aadhaa ghanTaa baakii raheegaa.

caar bajee hāī. gaaRii saarhee pāāc bajee aaeegii.

aaTh bajee hāī. lakhnau sawaa das bajee pahūcēēgee.

raat-kee das bajee hāī. chah bajee saweeree namaaz paRhēēgee.

pāāc bajee hāī. paunee chah-tak mandir-mēē phuul caRhaanaa hai.

caar bajee hāī. saarhee pāāc bajee dukaanēē band hoo jaaēēgee.

aaTh bajee hāī. paunee nau bajee khaadii bhanDaar khuleegaa.

baarah bajnee-waalee hāī. tiin bajee kaam ḱhatam hoo jaaeegaa.

eek bajnee-waalaa hai. paunee doo bajee darwaazaa band karnaa paReegaa.

chah bajnee-waalee hāī. sawaa chah bajee bhiiR aaeegii.

das bajnee-waalee hāī. saarhee gyaarah bajee andar jaanaa hai.

### Pattern 3

#### A. Conversational response drill

##### Instructor

Is there any coffee?

kuch kaafii hai?

kyaa namkiin hai?

kyaa duudh hai?

kyaa kuch miThaaii hai?

kyaa kuch caay hai?

kyaa phuul hai, baazaar-mēē?

kyaa kooii Taiksii hai, saRak-par?

kyaa kulii hai, pleetfarm-par?

kyaa kilaa hai, is šahar-mēē?

kyaa mandir hai, yahāā-par?

##### Class

Would you have some coffee, Sir?

kuch kaafii piijiyeegaa, saahab?

kuch namkiin khaaiyeegaa, saahab?

kuch duudh piijiyeegaa, saahab?

kuch miThaaii khaaiyeegaa, saahab?

kuch caay piijiyeegaa, saahab?

kuch phuul khariidiyeegaa, saahab?

eek Taiksii liijiyeegaa, saahab?

kulii kiijiyeegaa, saahab?

kilaa deekhiyeegaa, saahab?

phuul caRhaaiyeegaa, saahab?

#### B. Repeat drill A using the past participle plus jaanaa instead of the -gaa form.

##### Instructor

Is there any coffee?

kuch kaafii hai?

kyaa namkiin hai?

##### Class

Would you have some coffee, Sir?

kuch kaafii pii jaaee.

kuch namkiin khaayaa jaaee.

#### C. Individual conversational response

Instructor: Is Delhi far from here?

1st Student: Would you like to go to Delhi?

Instructor: kyaa dillii duur hai yahāā-see?

1st Student: kyaa aap dillii jaaiyeegaa?

Instructor: aaj dhuup baRii teez hai.

2nd Student: kyaa aap niibuu-kaa šarbat lēēgee?

Give any reasonable response on the above pattern:

##### Instructor

kyaa yahāā-kii saaRiyāā mahāgii hāī?

kyaa hazrat ganj-mēē ghuumnāa acchii ciiz hai?

kyaa kaafii haaus duur hai?

aaj sinemaa-mēē kaun-saa kheel hai.

kyaa kurtaa mileegaa khaadii bhanDaar-mēē?

kyaa aap deer-see aaēēgee?

kyaa yee nišaan naagrii lipi-mēē likhee hāī?

kyaa mandir khulaa hai?

kyaa yee galii bahut mašhuur hai?

kyaa woo makaan bahut ūūcaa hai?

kyaa woo panDit hindii booltee hāī?

#### Pattern 4

##### A. Conversational response drill

###### Instructor

Listen, I said to bring some tea.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki caay laaoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki udhar jaaoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki is-koo uThaaoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki is pleet-koo badloo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki paisaa doo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki wahii likhoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki yee caay piyoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki kaafii haaus caloo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki kulii bulaaoo.  
sunoo, ham-nee kahaa ki yee bakas rakh doo.

###### Class

I'm on my way to bring it  
abhii laayaa.  
abhii gayaa.  
abhii uThaayaa.  
etc.

#### Pattern 5

##### A. Substitution drill

The students are going out to walk.

widyaarthii (ghuumnee) jaa rahee hai.  
doostõõ-see milnee  
caay piinee  
namkiin khaanee  
sinemaa deekhnee  
hindii paRhnee  
phuul caRhaanee  
kapRee badalnee

##### B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What are you going out to do?  
1st Student: I am going out to take a walk.

Instructor: aap kyaa karnee jaa rahee hai.  
1st Student: mai ghuumnee jaa rahaa hu.

Instructor: aap kyaa karnee jaa rahee hai.  
2nd Student: mai doostõõ-see milnee jaa rahaa hu.

Continue around the class, any reasonable answer is acceptable.

## Pattern 6

## A. Substitution drill

We should go now, otherwise the show will start.

ab too calnaa caahiye, kahīī (kheel na šurū hoo jāaee).  
 darwaazaa band na hoo jāaee.  
 gaaRii na calii jāaee.  
 woo na waapas aae.  
 saamaan na bik jāaēē.  
 khēel na khatam hoo jāaee.  
 deer na hoo jāaee.  
 dhuup na aae.

## B. Individual conversational response

Instructor: When will the show start?

1st Student: We'll have to go now, otherwise the show will start.

Instructor: khēel kab šurū hoo jāaegaa.

1st Student: ab too jāanaa hai, kahīī khēel na šurū hoo jāaee.

Instructor: darwaazaa kab band hoo jāaegaa.

2nd Student: ab too calnaa hai, kahīī darwaazaa na band hoo jāaee.

Instructor: saahab kab waapas aaēēgee.

3rd Student: ab too calnaa hai, kahīī saahab na waapas aa jāaēē.

Instructor

gaaRii yahāā-see kab calii jāaegii.  
 mootar udhar kab pahūc jāaegii.  
 Taiksii saRak-par kab mileegii.  
 klaas kab khatam hoo jāaegii.  
 aap-kee doost kab pahūcēēgee.  
 sastii saaRiyāā kab bik jāaēēgii.  
 mandir kab deekh sakēēgee.  
 doostōō-see kab milēēgee.  
 khaadii bhanDaar kab khul jāaegaa.  
 nīibuu-kaa šarbat kab mileegaa.

## Pattern 7

## A. Substitution drill

The woman who's sitting there, what is she doing?

joo aurat (udhar baiThii) hai, woo kyaa kar rahii hai.  
 cappal pahan rahii  
 caay pii rahii  
 phuul beec rahii  
 diiwaar-par likh rahii  
 bakas uThaa rahii  
 khiRkii band kar rahii  
 cappal badal rahii



## B. Transformation drill

### Instructor

The woman is sitting there. She is selling flowers.

aurat udhar baiThii hai. woo phuul beec rahii hai.  
eek aadmii andar jaa rahaa hai. woo namkiin khaa rahaa hai.  
widyaarthii dukaan-kee paas khaRaa hai. woo naagarii-mēē likh rahaa hai.  
bairaa kaafii haaus-mēē hai. woo kaafii laa rahaa hai.  
saahab sinemaa-kee paas khaRaa hai. woo kheel deekhnaa caahtaa hai.  
šabd diwaar par hai. woo hindii-mēē likhaa hai.  
saahab udhar baiThee hāī. woo doost-kaa intizaar kar rahee hāī.  
loog masjid-kee andar hāī. woo namaaz paRh rahee hāī.  
wideešii panDit-see baat kar rahee hāī. woo šuddh hindii bool rahee hāī.  
khilaunee udhar dukaan-mēē hāī. woo baahar-see māgaeee jaatee hāī.

### Class

The woman who is sitting there is selling flowers.

joo aurat udhar baiThii hai, woo phuul beec rahii hai.  
joo aadmii andar jaa rahaa hai, woo namkiin khaa rahaa hai.  
joo widyaarthii dukaan-kee paas khaRaa hai, woo naagarii mēē likh rahaa hai.  
joo šabd diwaar-par lagaa hai, woo hindii-mēē likhaa hai.  
etc.

## Pattern 8

binaa usually occurs as part of the post-positional construction -kee binaa 'without', but in certain frequently used expressions it may also precede the noun:

binaa duudh	without milk
duudh-kee binaa	without milk

binaa phrases may be followed by -kaa and be part of larger noun constructions, as in:

binaa duudh-kii kaafii piyēēgee.  
We'll drink coffee without milk.

or, using a different word order:

kaafii binaa duudh-kii piyēēgee.  
We'll drink coffee without milk.

## A. Substitution drill

The food won't be good without milk.

khaanaa, binaa (duudh), acchaa nahīī lageegaa.  
paanii  
kaafii  
caay  
ciinii  
namkiin  
miThaaii  
phal

## B. Transformation drill

Instructor

Without milk the food won't be good.

binaa duudh, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa paanii, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa kaafii, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa caay, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa ciinii, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa namkiin, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa miThaaii, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa phal, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.

Class

Without milk, the food won't be good.

duudh-kee binaa, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 paanii-kee binaa, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 kaafii-kee binaa, khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 etc.

## C. Transformation drill

Instructor

The coffee won't be good without sugar.

kaafii binaa ciinii-kii acchii nahĩĩ lageegii.  
 khaanaa binaa namak-kaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 caay binaa duudh-kii acchii nahĩĩ lageegii.  
 duudh binaa ciinii-kaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 phal binaa duudh-kaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 peeRaa binaa caay-kaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 keelee binaa duudh-kee acchee nahĩĩ lagẽẽgee.  
 khurcan binaa kaafii-kii acchii nahĩĩ lageegii.

Class

Coffee without sugar won't be good.

binaa ciinii-kii kaafii acchii nahĩĩ lageegii.  
 binaa namak-kaa khaanaa acchaa nahĩĩ lageegaa.  
 binaa duudh-kii caay acchii nahĩĩ lageegii.  
 etc.

## Pattern 9

Review the numbers from one to fifty, in preparation for learning the additional numbers in units six and seven.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

hazrat ganj kis šahar-mēē hai.  
kyaa doost-koo bahut intizaar karnaa paRaa?  
wideešii-kee doost kab pahūce hai.  
sinemaa šurū hoonee-mēē kitnaa samay baakii rahaa.  
aazaadii-kee pahlee kaafii haaus-mēē kyaa hootaa thaa.  
kyaa kaafii haaus sinemaa-see bahut duur hai?  
dukaanōō-par boord kin kin bhaašaaōō-mēē lagee hāī.  
yuu pii gawarment hainDii kraifT-kaa boord kis lipi-mēē lihkaa haī.  
loog kis samay kaafii haaus-mēē aatee hāī.  
kyaa wideešii-koo šarbat pasand hai?  
kyaa wideešii kaafii-mēē duudh leetii hāī?  
wideešii-koo kaun-saa lafz ajīb lagaa.  
šaaam-koo hazrat ganj-mēē adhik-tar kaun loog aatee hāī.  
kaafii haaus-see kyōō calnaa thaa.

### Group 2

lakhnauu-kii kis saRak-par wideešii doostōō-see mil rahee hāī.  
kyaa sinemaa šurū hoo rahaa thaa?  
wideešii-nec kis jagah-kii bahut taariif sunii hai.  
kaafii haaus kab banaa thaa.  
aazaadii-kee baad dukaanōō-par boord kyaa hindii-mēē lagee hāī?  
hindii bhaašaa kis lipi-mēē likhii jaatii hai.  
yuu pii gawarment hainDii kraifT-koo kyaa kaatee hāī.  
loog kaafii haaus-mēē kyaa karnee jaa rahee hāī.  
wideešii kyaa piitii hāī.  
wideešii apni kaafii kaisii piitii hāī.  
kyaa namkiin-mēē ciinii Daalii jaatii hai?  
kyaa kaafii haaus-mēē bahut bhiR thii?  
šaaam hootee hootee lakhnauu-kee widyaarthii kahāā jaatee hāī.  
kyaa kaafii piinee-kee baad kheel šurū hoonee-mēē bahut samay baakii rahaa?

## Situational Response

### jain:

kyaa aap-nee kabhi kaafii haaus deekhaa hai?  
kyaa aap-koo kuch deer huii?  
kyaa aap-kee dees-mēē bhii Šarbat piitee hāī?  
amriikaa-mēē too bahut sinemaa ghar hōōgee.  
aap kaafii piinee calēēgee?  
aap-koo kaun-sii ciiz zyaadaa pasand hai, kaafii yaa Šarbat?  
aap deew naagrii lipi paRh saktee hāī?  
kyaa amriikaa-mēē bhii widyaarthii Šaam-koo kaafii haaus-mēē jaatee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee dees-mēē khaadii bhii biktii hai?  
kyaa aap urdu lipi bhii paRh saktee hāī?  
dukaanōō-kee boorD-par kyaa likhaa thaa.  
kyaa aap loog Šarbat bhii binaa ciinii-kee piitee hāī?  
kyaa kaafii-mēē ciinii Daal dūū?

### wideesii:

jain saahab, aap lakhnauu-mēē kitnee saal-see rahtee hāī.  
aap loog hazrat ganj.kab pahūce.  
sinemaa-see kaafii haaus kitnii duur hai.  
bairaa kaafii kab laaeegaa.  
kyaa aap-koo bahut intizaar karnaa paRaa?  
sinemaa Šurua hoone-mēē ab kitnii deer hai.  
kyaa kaafii haaus-mēē kooii ThanDii ciiz piinee-koo mileegii?  
yee saamnee boorD-par kyaa likhaa hai.  
lakhnauu-kii kyaa khaas ciiz maŠhuur hai.  
kyaa yahāā-kii aurtēē bahut Šringaar kartii hāī?  
widyaarthii Šaam-kee samay kyaa kartee hāī.  
kyaa lakhnauu-mēē Šuddh hindii boolii jaatii hai?  
aap-koo kaafii binaa duudh-kii too acchii nahīē lageegii.  
kyaa aap-kee dees-mēē kookaa koolaa bhii piyaa jaataa hai?

## Review Conversations

### kaafii haaus-mēē

1. A: kahiye saahab, aap-koo kyaa pasand hai, caay yaa kaafii?  
B: aaj too bahut garmii hai, aur kyaa hoogaa piinee-kee liyee.  
A: niibuu-kaa Šarbat liijiyeegaa, yaa kookaa koolaa.  
B: kookaa koolaa too hamaaree deēš-mēē bhii hai. Šarbat lūūgaa.  
A: kuch khaanee-kee liyee bhii lēēgee? namkiin yaa miThaaii?  
B: thooRaa-saa namkiin lūūgaa.

Improvise similar conversations, using other foods.

2. A: kuch aur Šarbat piyaa jaaee?  
B: meeraa khayaal hai, ki jaanaa caahiye, kahīī deer na hoo jaaee.  
A: nahīī saahab, jaatee kyōō hāī. aap-koo too kooii kaam nahīī hai.  
B: kyaa bajaa hai? chah bajee eek doost-see milnee jaanaa hai.  
A: abhii too keewal saaRhee pāāc hai. aadhaa ghanTaa baakii hai.  
bairaa, eek aur Šarbat laanaa.  
B: acchaa, eek aur piiūūgaa, leekin phir too jaanaa hai.

Improvise similar conversations about someone visiting in your home.

3. A: aaiye Šarmaa-jii, baiThiye. aap-nee bahut deer kar dii.  
B: aap-koo intizaar too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
A: nahīī, abhii abhii aayaa hūū. kahiye kyaa huua.  
B: kuch nahīī. thooRaa-saa kaam thaa.  
A: aap-kee liyee kyaa māgaaūū, caay yaa namkiin?  
B: kuch kaafii piiūūgaa aur Šaayad thooRaa-saa namkiin.

Improvise similar conversations about a friend who was delayed.

4. A: ee bairaa, saahab-kee liyee eek caay laanaa, binaa duudh-kii, aur hamaaree liyee eek kaafii.  
B: kuch khaaiyeegaa bhii?  
A: nahīī kuch nahīī khaaēēgee. sunoo bairaa, hamaarii caay kaafii nahīī aaēēgii kyaa?  
B: abhii laayaa saahab.  
A: ee bairaa, yee pleet too saaf nahīī hai, aur caay-mēē ciinii Daal dii.  
is-koo badalnaa hoogaa.  
B: acchaa saahab badal dēēgee. aur kuch nahīī caahiye?  
A: nahīī, bas aur kuch nahīī.

Improvise other similar conversations.

saRak-par

5. A: aap too bahut saaf urduu booltee hai. aap-nee urduu kaha siikhii?  
B: lakhnauu-mēē. ham-nee sunaa hai, ki lakhnauu-mēē bahut acchii urduu boolii jaatii hai.  
A: yee too sac hai. phir bhii aliigaRh-kii urduu bhii acchii hai.  
B: aliigaRh bhii gayaa.  
A: kyaa aap yee nišaan bhii paRh saktee hāī?  
B: woo kis lipi-mēē likhee hāī?  
A: woo urduu hii hai.  
B: nahīī, abhii-tak itnaa nahīī siikhaa.

Improvise similar conversations about other languages.

6. A: maaf kiijiyeegaa saahab, aasafii masjid kis taraf hoogii.  
B: kaun-sii masjid?  
A: aasafii masjid. māī-nee us-kii bahut taariif sunii hai.  
B: woo too yahāā nazdiq-hii hai. deekhiye, udhar joo nišaan hai, us-par raastaa likhaa hai.  
A: woo nišaan too nahīī paRh saktaa hūū.  
B: acchaa, too pahlee udhar caliyeegaa, daahinee haath-par aur phir siidhee. samjhee?  
A: samajh gayaa. bahut meharbaanii aap-kii.

Improvise similar conversations about finding your way to a temple, fort, etc.

7. A: pahūc gae sinemaa-par. andar caliyeegaa kyaa?  
B: andar too bahut garmii hoogii. kheel kab šuruu hoonee-waalaa hai. aap-koo pataa hai?  
A: Thiik pataa nahīī. meeraa khayaal hai, ki kheel šuruu hoonee-mēē koofī ( pandrah mināt baakii hāī.  
B: tab too baahar hii rahēē.  
A: Thiik hai. thooRaa-saa saRak-par ghuumaa jaaee aur dukaanēē deekhi jaaēē.  
B: acchii baat hai.

Improvise similar conversations.

8. A: bataaiye, kal raat aap kahāā gae thee.  
B: ham sinemaa gae thee.  
A: kyaa aap-koo acchaa lagaa?  
B: bahut bhiiR thii aur bahut intizaar karnaa paRaa. leekin waisee kheel too acchaa thaa.  
A: raat-kee samay too saaree widyaarthii sinemaa jaatee hāī.  
B: jii hāā, bahut jawaan loog thee, leekin waisee kheel too acchaa thaa.

Improvise similar conversations on the above model.

9. Improvise longer conversations on the following topics: 1. a walk in cāādniī cauk; 2. going to a coffee house; 3. going to see a show.

Unit VI Part A

Conversation

- 1 bas-kee safar-kee baaree-mēē.  
2 naii dillii-mēē Teeliifuun-par baat-ciit.
- 

- 3 hindustaanii: heloo. kaun, smith saahab?  
4 wideešii: hāā, māl smith bool rahaa hūū. aap kaun saahab bool rahee hāī.  
5 hindustaanii: namastee smith saahab. māl singh bool rahaa hūū. kyaa haal caal hai?  
6 wideešii: sab Thiik hai. apnaa sunāaiyee.  
7 hindustaanii: sab iišwar-kii kripaa hai. ham-nee sunaa, ki aap kahīī baahar gae thee.
- 

- 8 wideešii: jii hāā. zaraa sahaaranpur calaa gayaa thaa.  
9 hindustaanii: aap kaisee gae thee. bas-see yaa Treen-see.  
10 wideešii: bas-see gayaa, jis-see deehaat deekh sakūū.  
11 hindustaanii: aap kis din gae thee.  
12 wideešii: pichlee itwaar-koo gayaa, aur is šukrwaar-koo laut aayaa.
- 

- 13 hindustaanii: raastee-mēē aap-koo kooii takliif too nahīī huii.  
14 wideešii: nahīī, safar baRaa dilcasp thaa.  
15 hindustaanii: sabhii kism-kee loogōō-see mulaakaat huii hoogii.  
16 wideešii: isii liyee too māl-nee bas-see safar kiyaa thaa.  
17 hindustaanii: yahāā-see sahaaranpur-tak jaanee-mēē kitnee ghanTee lagee.  
18 wideešii: lagbhag Dhaaii ghanTee lagee. naii gaariyāā kaafii teez jaatii hāī.
-

- 19 hindustaani: aap-koo raastee-mēē kahīī ruknaa too nahīī paRaa.  
20 wideeśii: sirf doo baar. nadii-kaa joo pul hai, us-kii marammat hoo  
rahii thii.  
21 wideeśii: usii-kii wajah-see ruknaa paRaa.  
22 aur duusrii baar injan-mēē kuch kharaabii hoo gaii thii.
- 

- 23 hindustaanii: jab aglii baar jaanee-kaa iraadaa hoo, too mujhee bhii  
bataaēē.  
24 wideeśii: bahut khuśii hoogii. Śaayad aglee budhwaar-koo māī phir jaaūū.  
25 hindustaanii: budhwaar-koo too Śaayad na cal paaūū. leekin soolah  
taariikh-koo kaisaa raheegaa.  
26 wideeśii: acchaa raheegaa, soolah-koo śaniwaar hai, is liyee fursat  
raheegii.



## Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

H: hindustaanii  
W: wideesii

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>bas</p> <p>safar</p> <p>1 <u>bas-kee safar-kee baaree-mēē.</u></p> <p>Teeliifuun</p> <p>2 <u>naii dillii-mēē Teeliifuun-par</u><br/><u>baat-ciit.</u></p> <p>heloo</p> <p>3 H: <u>heloo, kaun, smith saahab?</u></p> <p>kaun saahab</p> <p>4 W: <u>hāā, māī smith bool rahaa hūū.</u><br/><u>aap kaun saahab bool rahee</u><br/><u>hāī.</u></p> <p>haal</p> <p>haal caal</p> <p>5 H: <u>namastee smith saahab. māī</u><br/><u>singh bool rahaa hūū. kyaa</u><br/><u>haal caal hai?</u></p> <p>sunanaa</p> <p>apnaa sunaaiyee</p> <p>6 W: <u>sab Thiik hai. apnaa sunaaiyee.</u></p> <p>iiśwar</p> <p>kripaa</p> <p>iiśwar-kii kripaa hai</p> <p>kahīī</p> <p>7 H: <u>sab iiśwar-kii kripaa hai.</u><br/><u>ham-nee sunaa, ki aap kahīī</u><br/><u>baahar gae thee.</u></p> | <p>bus (f)</p> <p>journey (m)</p> <p><u>About a bus journey.</u></p> <p>telephone (m)</p> <p><u>Telephone conversation in New Delhi.</u></p> <p>hello</p> <p><u>Hello, is this Mr. Smith?</u></p> <p>which gentleman</p> <p><u>Yes, this is Smith speaking. Who</u><br/><u>is this please?</u></p> <p>condition, health (m)</p> <p>condition (colloq) (m)</p> <p><u>Namaste Mr. Smith. This is Singh.</u><br/><u>How are you?</u></p> <p>to tell</p> <p>tell your own (health)</p> <p><u>Everything is fine. How is</u><br/><u>everything with you?</u></p> <p>God (Hindu) (m)</p> <p>kindness, favor (f)</p> <p>it is God's kindness</p> <p>somewhere</p> <p><u>Fine, thank God; I heard</u><br/><u>you've been away somewhere.</u></p> |
|---|--|

- calaa jaanaa
- 8 W: jii hãã. zaraa sahaaranpur  
calaa gayaa thaa.
- kaisee  
Treen
- 9 H: aap kaisee gae thee. bas-see  
yaa Treen-see.
- jis-see  
deehaat
- 10 W: bas-see gayaa, jis-see deehat  
deekh sakũũ.
- kis din
- 11 H: aap kis din gae thee.
- itwaar  
Ÿukrwaar  
lauTnaa  
lauT aanaa
- 12 W: pichlee itwaar-koo gayaa, aur  
is Ÿukrwaar-koo lauT aayaa.
- takliif  
aap-koo takliif huii
- 13 H: raastee-mẽẽ aap-koo kooii  
takliif too nahĩĩ huii.
- dilcasp  
baRaa dilcasp
- 14 W: nahĩĩ, safar baRaa dilcasp  
thaa.
- sabhii  
mulaakaat  
loogõõ-see mulaakaat huii
- 15 H: sabhii kism-kee loogõõ-see  
mulaakaat huii hoogii.
- isii liyee
- 16 W: isii liyee too mãã-nee bas-see  
safar kiyaa thaa.

- to go away
- Yes. I went to Saharanpur for  
a while.
- in what manner?  
train (f)
- How did you go, by bus or by train?
- from which  
countryside (m)
- I went by bus so I could see the  
countryside.
- on what day?  
What day did you go?
- Sunday (m)  
Friday (m)  
to return  
to come back
- I went last Sunday, and came back  
this Friday.
- trouble (f)  
you had trouble
- You didn't have any trouble on  
the way?
- interesting  
very interesting
- No, the trip was very interesting.
- sab-hii; all  
meeting, encounter (f)  
a meeting took place with  
people
- You must have met all kinds of  
people.
- for that reason  
That's why I made the trip by bus.

sahaaranpur-tak  
jaanee-mēē

in going to Saharanpur

17 H: yahāā-see sahaaranpur-tak  
jaanee-mēē, kitnee ghanTee  
lagee.

How many hours did it take to go  
from here to Saharanpur?

gaaRii

bus, conveyance

lagbhag

approximately

Dhaaii

2 1/2

teez

fast

kaafii teez

quite fast

18 W: lagbhag Dhaaii ghanTee lagee.  
naii gaaRiyāā kaafii teez  
jaatii hāī.

It took about 2 1/2 hours. The new  
buses go quite fast.

19 H: aap-koo raastee-mēē kahīī  
ruknaa too nahīī paRaa.

You didn't have to stop anywhere on  
the way, did you?

doo baar

twice, two times

nadii

river

pul

bridge (m)

20 W: sirf doo baar. nadii-kaa joo  
pul hai, us-kii marammat  
hoo rahii thii.

Only twice. The bridge over the  
river was being repaired.

wajah

reason (f)

us-kii wajah-see

because of it

21 W: usii-kii wajah-see ruknaa paRaa.

We had to stop for that.

injan

engine, motor (m)

kharaab

bad

kharaabii

defect, trouble

22 W: aur duusrii baar injan-mēē  
kuch kharaabii hoo gaii thii.

And the second time something went  
wrong in the engine.

jab

when

iraadaa

intention (m)

jaanee-kaa iraadaa hai

there is intention of going

23 H: jab aglii baar jaanee-kaa  
iraadaa hoo, too mujhee  
bhii bataaēē.

The next time you plan to go let  
me know too.

khushii

happiness

budhwaar

Wednesday (m)

24 W: bahut khushii hoogii. Šaayad  
aglee budhwaar-koo māī  
phir jaaūū.

I'd be very glad to. Maybe I'll  
go again next Wednesday.

paanaa

cal paanaa

taariikh

soolah taariikh

25 H: budhwaar-koo too Yaayad na cal  
paaũũ. leekin soolah taariikh-  
koo kaisaa raheegaa.

Yaniwaar

fursat

fursat raheegii

26 W: acchaa raheegaa, soolah-koo  
saniwaar hai, is liyee fursat  
raheegii.

to find

to get to go

date (f)

the sixteenth

I probably won't get to go on  
Wednesday, but how would the  
16th be?

Saturday (m)

leisure (f)

free time will remain

That will be fine. The 16th is a  
Saturday, so I'll be free.

### Cultural Notes

Trains, which are State-owned, and buses, both State-owned and operated by private companies, are the common forms of long- and medium-distance transportation in India. Buses give access to many rural areas not tapped by trains and provide an excellent opportunity for seeing the countryside and the people of India, for they are often extremely crowded, especially at rush hours. A bus stand at rush hour is a jumble of color and activity. State-owned buses tend to be fairly new machines, while private companies distinguish themselves by the brilliant colors with which they decorate their buses. The buses operated by some of the more marginal companies, especially in the rural areas, tend to be rather venerable by American standards. The drivers are often Sikhs or Punjabis in North India and they are the objects of a large stock of standard jokes.

Once on the bus, the visitor elbows his way to a seat and prepares for what will probably be a more adventurous journey than its American counterpart. Roads are constantly being improved, and routes between the major cities are almost entirely paved now, but unpaved roads are often encountered in the rural areas. Heat and dust create formidable maintenance problems and breakdowns are not uncommon. When this occurs, the busdriver (or truck driver) must be prepared to act as his own mechanic. This he does with competence and skill which would do credit to the best American mechanic.

If the visitor is travelling by bus to see the rural areas, he will observe that bazaar stands and services tend to collect about the bus stands in the countryside. The penetration of modern transportation into the countryside thus provides an opportunity for enterprising villagers to establish new businesses and to meet and mix with travellers.

The telephone conversation in which the bus journey is reported in this lesson was photographed in the comfortable and tastefully decorated modern apartment of a middle-class business family in Delhi.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
baar	dafaa	time
lagbhag	karib	approximately
keewal	sirf	only
iiṣwar (Hindu)	ḡhudaā (Moslem)	God
iiṣwar-kii kripaa	ḡhudaā-kii meharbaanii	Thank God

### 2. Days of the week

Names of the days of the week vary both regionally and in Hindi and Urdu contexts. Here we give the most common Hindi and Urdu forms.

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
itwaar	itwaar	Sunday
soomwaar	soomwaar, piir	Monday
mangalwaar (mangal)	mangal	Tuesday
budhwaar (budh)	budh	Wednesday
brihaspatiwaar	jumeraat	Thursday
Ṣukrwaar	jumaa	Friday
Ṣaniwaar (Ṣaniicar)	saniicar	Saturday

### 3. Terms for health

The following additional terms are commonly used in talking about a person's health:

haalāt	condition (f)	biimaarii	illness
haal	health (m)	biimaar	ill (adj)

### 4. Related pairs

ḡharaabii	defect
ḡharaab	bad

### 5. Numbers 50 to 60

pacaas	50	chappan	56
ikyaawan	51	sattaawan	57
baawan	52	aTṡhaawan	58
tirpan	53	unsaṡh	59
chauwan	54	saaṡh	60
pacpan	55		

## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

#### A. Substitution drill

About a bus journey.

(bas-kee safar) -kee baaree-měě.

banaaras-kee safar

makaan DhūDhnee

taa; mahal deekhnee

dhoobii bulaanee

kulii karnee

phal-waalee-see baat karnee

saaRii khariidnee

juutōō-kii marammat karnee

saamaan uThaanee

makaan-kaa pataa lagaanee

kaafii piinee

#### B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Who did the Sahab talk to in Aligarh and about what?

1st Student: He talked to the fruitseller about fruit.

Instructor: aliigaRh-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

1st Student: phal-waalee-see, phal-kee baaree-měě baat-ciit kii.

Instructor: hooTal-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

2nd Student: bairee-see, kapRee dhulaanee-kee baaree-měě baat-ciit kii.

#### Instructor

kaafii haaus-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit, kii aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

sTeeśan-par saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

wiśwanaath-jii-kii galii-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

Teeliifuun-par saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

siikrii-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

jaipur-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

cāādnii cauk-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

nainītaal-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

sTeeśan-par saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

naii bastii-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

kaafii-haaus-měě saahab-nee kis-see baat-ciit kii, aur kis-kee baaree-měě.

## Pattern 2

calaa jaanaa 'to go away' is inflected like an -aa participle plus jaanaa construction.

## A. Substitution-agreement drill

The dhobi had gone off to Saharanpur.

(dhoobii) sahaaranpur calaa gayaa thaa.

wideešii

wee laRkiyāā

singh saahab

duusraa bairaa

deehaatii loog

\*wah buRhiyaa

\*Beginning with this unit we will use the formal wah, yah and wee, vee in grammar drills.

## B. Repeat the above drill changing the verb to the future.

The dhobi is going to go away to Saharanpur.

(dhoobii) sahaaranpur calaa jaaeggaa.

## C. Chain drill

Instructor: The foreigner went away to Jaipur.

1st Student: What did he go to see in Jaipur?

2nd Student: He went to see the Hawa Mahal.

Instructor: wideešii jaipur calae gae thee.

1st Student: jaipur-mēē kyaa deekhnee calae gae.

2nd Student: hawaa mahal deekhnee calae gae.

Instructor: laRkaa naii bastii calaa gayaa thaa.

1st Student: naii bastii-mēē kyaa DhūūDhnee calaa gayaa thaa.

2nd Student: makaan DhūūDhnee calaa gayaa thaa.

Instructor

meem saahab kaašii calii gaii thīī.

saahab dhoobii-kee paas calae gae thee.

bairaa baahar calaa gayaa thaa.

wideešii aur un-kii doost aasafii masjid calii gaii thīī.

moocii nainiitaal calaa gayaa thaa.

panDit mandir calae gae thee.

saahab baazaar calae gae thee.

## D. Repeat drill C in the future.



### Pattern 3

#### A. Substitution-agreement drill

The bridge over there was being repaired.

wahãã-kaa joo (pul) hai, us-kii marammat hoo rahii thii.  
masjid  
makaan  
dukaanẽẽ  
galiyãã  
khãDhar  
kaafii haaus  
kamree

#### B. Substitution drill

The pandits in Banaras are the ones you should talk to.

banaaras-kee joo panDit hãĩ, un-(see baat karnii) caahiyee.  
see milnaa  
kee liyee saamaan leenaa  
koo phuul deenaa  
kee baaree-mẽẽ bataanaa  
mẽẽ-see eek bulaanaa  
kii hindii paRhni  
see sawaal puuchnaa

#### C. Transformation drill

##### Instructor

The river bridge is being repaired.

nadii-kee pul-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.

##### Class

That bridge over the river, that's being repaired.

nadii-kaa joo pul hai, us-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.

##### Instructor

aagree-kee kilee-koo zaruur deekhnaa hai.  
banaaras-kee panDitõõ-see zaruur milnaa hai.  
lakhnauu-kee kaafii haaus-mẽẽ kaafii piĩnee jaanaa hai.  
deehaatii loogõõ-see mulaakaat hoonli hai.  
nadii-kee pul-par ruknaa paRaa.  
sahaaranpur-kii bas-see jaanaa paReegaa.  
kaaĩi-kee mandirõõ-mẽẽ phuul caRhaanaa hai.  
gaaRii-kee injan-kii marammat karnii hai.  
iii-kee tyoohaar-koo zaruur deekhnaa hai.  
sTeeĩan-kee kulii-koo bulaanaa hai.

## D. Transformation drill

Instructor

That bridge over the river is being repaired.

nadii-kaa joo pul hai, us-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.  
 aagree-kaa joo kilaa hai, us-koo zaruur deekhnaa hai.  
 banaaras-kee joo panDit hāī, un-see zaruur milnaa hai.  
 lakhnauu-kaa joo kaafii haaus hai, us-mēē kaafii piinii hai.  
 deehaatii loog joo hāī, un-see mulaakaat hoonii hai.  
 nadii-kaa joo pul hai, us-par ruknaa paRaa.  
 sahaaranpur-kii joo bas hai, us-see jaanaa paReegaa.  
 kaaśii-kee joo mandir hāī, un-mēē phuul caRhaanaa hai.  
 gaarii-kaa joo injan hai, us-kii marammat karnii thii.  
 iid-kaa joo tyoohaar hai, us-koo zaruur deekhnaa hai.  
 sTeeśan-kaa joo kulii hai, us-koo bulaanaa hai.  
 siikrii-kee joo mahal hāī, un-koo akbar-nee banwaase.  
 gaarii-kee piichee joo bakas hai, us-koo uThaanaa hai.  
 saahab-kaa joo pleet hai, us-koo badalnaa hai.

Class

That's the bridge over the river which is being repaired.

wah nadii-kaa pul hai, jis-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.  
 wah aagree-kaa kilaa hai, jis-koo zaruur deekhnaa hai.  
 wee banaaras-kee panDit hāī, jin-see zaruur milnaa hai.  
 etc.

## E. Individual conversational response

Instructor: Which one was the bridge over the river?

1st Student: That was the bridge which was being fixed.

Instructor: nadii-kaa pul kaun-saa thaa.

1st Student: wahii pul thaa, jis-kii marammat hoo rahii thii.

Instructor: aagree-kaa kilaa kaun-saa thaa.

2nd Student: wahii kilaa thaa, jis-koo hamēē deekhnaa thaa.

Instructor

deehaatii loog kaun-see thee.  
 banaaras-kee panDit kaun-see thee.  
 lakhnauu-kaa kaafii haaus kaun-saa thaa.  
 sahaaranpur-kii bas kaun-sii thii.  
 kaaśii-kaa mandir kaun-saa thaa.  
 sTeeśan-kaa kulii kaun-saa thaa.  
 siikrii-kee mahal kaun-see thee.  
 saahab-kaa pleet kaun-saa thaa.  
 duun ekspres kaun-sii gaarii thii.  
 aasafii masjid kaun-sii thii.

Use the material from drills C and D in your answers.

Pattern 4

A. Chain drill

Instructor: Mr. \_\_\_\_\_, do you know Mr. \_\_\_\_\_?

1st. Student: Yes I met Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

Instructor: keen saahab, kyaa aap smith saahab-koo jaantee hãĩ?

keen saahab: jii hãã, kal šaam-koo smith saahab-see mulaakaat huii.

keen saahab: smith saahab, kyaa aap roo saahab-koo jaantee hãĩ?

smith saahab: jii hãã, kal šaam-koo roo saahab-see mulaakaat huii.

Continue around the class.

B. Chain drill

Instructor: Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ do you know Mr. \_\_\_\_\_?

Mr. \_\_\_\_\_: No, I have not yet met Mr. \_\_\_\_\_.

Instructor: keen saahab, kyaa aap smith saahab-koo jaantee hãĩ?

keen saahab: jii nahĩĩ, abhii-tak smith saahab-see mulaakaat nahĩĩ huii.

Continue once more around the class.

Pattern 5

A. Substitution drill

jab phir (calẽẽ), too mãĩ bhii saath jaaũũ.

waapas aaẽẽ

safar karẽẽ

sahaaranpur lauTẽẽ

dechaat deekhẽẽ

ķilee-kee uupar caRhẽẽ

Taiksii bulaaẽẽ

B. Substitution-agreement drill

jab aglii baar safar karẽẽ, too (mãĩ) bhii saath jaaũũ.

panĀit-jii

bairaa

uušaa-jii

ham loog

hamaaree doost

gãũw-kaa rahnee-waalaa

## C. Conversational response drill

Instructor

The next time you go to see the fort, let me know too.

jab aglii baar kilaa deekhnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar Taiksii bulaanee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar saaRii khariidnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar namaaz paRhnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar kapRee dhulaanee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar ghuumnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar safar karnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab aglii baar hindii paRhnee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.  
 jab agiii baar makaan-kaa pataa lagaanee jaaẽẽ, too mujhee bhii bataaẽẽ.

Class

Then maybe you will see the fort with me.

too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath kilaa deekhẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath Taiksii bulaaẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath saaRii khariidẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath namaaz paRhẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath kapRee dhulaaẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath ghuumẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath safar karẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath kindii paRhẽẽ.  
 too šaayad aap bhii hamaaree saath pataa lagaaẽẽ.

## Pattern 6

## A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Maybe I'll bring some 'namkiin' from the bazaar.

šaayad mĩĩ baazaar-see kuch namkiin lee aaũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ mandir-mẽẽ phuul caRhaaũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ doostõõ-see kuch baat karũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ aglee šukrwaar-koo laut aaũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ nadii-kee paas thooRaa-saa rukũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ panDit-jii-see mulaakaat karũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ bas-see safar karũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ buland darwaazee-kee upar caRhũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ apnee juutee badlũũ.  
 šaayad mĩĩ jhoolaa udhar rakh dũũ.

Class

If we should get a chance, we'll also bring 'namkiin' from the bazaar.

maukaa milee, too ham bhii baazaar-see namkiin lee aaũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii mandir-mẽẽ phuul caRhaaũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii doostõõ-see kuch baat karũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii nadii-kee paas thooRaa-saa rukũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii panDit-jii-see mulaakaat karũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii bas-see safar karũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii buland darwaazee-kee upar caRhũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii juutee badlũũ.  
 maukaa milee, too ham bhii jhoolaa udhar rakh dũũ.

## Pattern 7

### A. Chain drill

Instructor: Will you be free on Wednesday for the trip?

1st Student: No, on Wednesday I won't be able to go. I'll be free Thursday.

Instructor: kyaa aap-koo budhwaar-koo fursat hoogii, safar-kee liyee?

1st Student: budhwaar-koo na cal paaũũgaa, brihaspatiwaar-koo fursat hoogii.

1st Student: kyaa aap-koo brihaspatiwaar-koo fursat hoogii, safar-kee liyee?

2nd Student: brihaspatiwaar-koo na cal paaũũgaa, ŝukrwaar-koo fursat hoogii.

Continue several times around the class, with each person adding a day.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

Teeliifuun-par kaun baat-ciit kar rahee hāī.  
kyaa smith saahab biimaar thee?  
kyaa smith saahab kahīī baahar gae thee?  
kyaa smith saahab pichlee soomwaar-koo gae thee?  
smith saahab bas-see kyaa deekhnee gae thee.  
smith saahab-kaa safar kaisaa rahaa.  
smith saahab-kii mulaakaat kis kism-kee loogōō-see huii?  
kyaa smith saahab-koo safar-mēē caar ghanTee lagee?  
kyaa puraanii gaaRiyāā teez jaatii hāī?  
nadii-kee pul-par bas-koo kyōō ruknaa paRaa?  
duusrii baar bas-kii kis ciiz-mēē kharaabii hoo gaii thii?  
smith saahab-kee saath kaun saahab deehaat jaaēēgee?  
kyaa biis taariikh-koo doonōō loogōō-koo fursat hai?  
soolah taariikh-koo kaun-saa din hai.

### Group 2

kyaa singh saahab wideesīi hāī?  
smith saahab-kaa haal caal kaisaa hai.  
kyaa smith saahab jaipur gae thee?  
smith saahab sahaaranpur kaisee gae thee.  
kyaa smith saahab sahaaranpur-see itwaar-koo lauTee?  
kyaa singh saahab bhii deehaat dekhnee gae thee?  
raastee-mēē smith saahab-kii mulaakaat kin loogōō-see huii.  
smith saahab-nee bas-see safar kyōō kiya.  
raastee-mēē smith saahab-koo kitnii baar ruknaa paRaa.  
smith saahab-koo safar-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
raastee-mēē kis ciiz-kii marammat hoo rahii thii.  
duusrii baar bas-koo kyōō ruknaa paRaa.  
aglii baar smith saahab kis din deehaat jaaēēgee.  
kyaa singh saahab budhwaar-koo jaa paaēēgee?  
kyaa smith saahab-koo šaniwaar-koo kaam hai?

## Situational Response

### hindustaanii:

heloo, kaun saahab bool rahee hāī?  
kyaa haal caal hai smith saahab?  
kyaa aap biimaar thee?  
kyaa aap kahīī baahar gae thee?  
kyaa aap-koo fursat hai, kal ųaam-koo?  
aap-koo raastee-mēē too bahut takliif huii hoogii.  
aap kahāā gae thee?  
kyaa aap gaaRii-see gae?  
kyaa aap-kii yaatriyōō-see mulaakaat huii?  
aap kab sahaaranpur gae.  
kyaa māī bhii app-kee saath jaa sakūūgaa?  
kyaa aap-koo raastee-mēē ruknaa paRaa?  
nadii-kaa joo pul hai, kyaa aap-nee us-koo deekhaa?  
kyaa naii gaaRiyāā acchii hāī?  
aap-nee bas-see safar kiyaa. is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai.

### wideeśii:

sunaaīyee singh saahab. sab Thiik hai?  
kyaa aap kabhii sahaaranpur gae hāī?  
kis ciiz-kee baaree-mēē bataaūū?  
kyaa aap-kee deēś-mēē bas bhii hootii hai.  
deehaatii loog kaun-sii bhaaśaa booltee hāī?  
kyaa aap kabhii Treen-see gae?  
adhik-tar aap kis klaas-mēē jaatee hāī.  
yahāā-see sahaaranpur-tak jaanee-mēē kitnaa samay lagtaa hai.  
aglee mangalwaar-koo māī phir jaaūūgaa. kyaa aap saath calēēgee?  
ham-nee sunaa, ki aap biimaar thee. ab kyaa haalat hai.  
kyaa kal ųaam-koo aap koo fursat hoogii?  
soolah taariikh-koo kaisaa raheegaa, safar-kee liyee.

## Review Conversations

Each of the short review conversations in this and the following units is to be used as a model for improvising brief exchanges on similar topics.

### safar-kee baaree-mēē

1. A: aap dillii kaisee gae thee. bas-see yaa Treen-see.  
B: Treen-see gayaa, mujhee bahut jaldii thii.  
A: kis klaas-mēē gae.  
B: tharD klaas-mēē, jis-see deehaatii loogōō-see mil sakaa.  
A: too safar kaisaa rahaa. aap-koo kooii takliif too nahīī huii.  
B: nahīī, kooii takliif nahīī huii. bahut bhiir thii, leekin phir bhii safar baRaa dilcasp thaa.
2. A: kahiye, safar-mēē kin lin loogōō-see mulaakaat huii?  
B: zyaadaa-tar too deehaat-kee loogōō-see baat huii.  
A: kyaa hindii-mēē un-see baat kar sakīī?  
B: muškil thaa. māī-nee abhii tak itnii hindii nahīī siikhii, leekin un-kii baat too samajh sakii.  
A: wee loog kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee. aur kahāā jaa rahee thee.  
B: wee gāāw-kee rahnee-waalee thee aur tiirth-kee liyee wiśwanaath-jii-kee mandir jaa rahee thee.

### idhar udhar-kii baat-ciit

3. A: meeree eek doost amar naath singh banaaras-kee rahnee-waalee hāī.  
kyaa aap un-koo jaantee hāī?  
B: nahīī, un-see mulaakaat nahīī huii hai.  
A: māī abhii un-see milnee jaa rahaa thaa. aap bhii saath calēē.  
B: un-koo takliif too nahīī hoogi.  
A: nahīī too. un-koo wideeśiyōō-see milnee-mēē bahut khuśii hootii hai.
4. A: namastee smith saahab. ham-nee sunaa, ki aap biimaar thee.  
B: hāā, pichlee itwaar-koo thooRaa-saa biimaar thaa, leekin ab too Thiik hūū. aur aap?  
A: sab iiśwar-kii kripaa hai. kyaa aap-koo fursat hai aaj śaam-koo?  
B: jii hāā, fursat hai.  
A: too phir kaafii haaus calēēgee.  
B: bahut acchaa, kis samay calēēgee, pāāc bajee?  
A: Thiik hai. pāāc bajee milēēgee.



5. A: kahiye guptaa-jii, kyaa haal caal hai.  
 B: sab Thiik hai, apnaa kahiye.  
 A: sab aap-kii kripaa hai. aap kahĩĩ gae thee, kyaa?  
 B: hãã, zaraa jaipur tak gayaa thaa.  
 A: kooii khaas kaam thaa kyaa?  
 B: nahĩĩ, yũũ hii zaraa eek doost-see milne calaa gayaa thaa.
6. A: aap kal kahãã gae thee, Ÿarma-jii.  
 B: gããw gayaa thaa, kuch kaam thaa.  
 A: aap-kaa gããw yahãã-see kitnii duur hai.  
 B: thooRii hii duur hai aur bas-see aadhaa ghanTaa lagtaa hai.  
 A: wahãã-tak Treen nahĩĩ jaatii, kyaa?  
 B: jaatii too hai, leekin mujhee bas-kaa safar zyaadaa pasand hai.
7. A: kahiye, aglee budwaar-koo aap-koo farsat hai, kyaa?  
 B: kyõõ. kyaa aap-koo kahĩĩ jaanaa thaa?  
 A: hãã, mãĩ zaraa waraaNasii jaa rahaa thaa. soocaa, Ÿaayad aap bhii calẽẽ.  
 B: budhwaar-koo too nahĩĩ, leekin Ÿaniwaar-koo cal saktaa hũũ.  
 A: acchaa, too Ÿaniwaar-koo calẽẽgee. kooii khaas baat nahĩĩ hai.  
 B: too aaTh bajee saweeree calaa jaaee?  
 A: aaTh bajee, Thiik hai.
8. A: kyaa aap guptaa-jii-see milee?  
 B: jii hãã, kal Ÿaam-koo mulaakaat huii thii.  
 A: too phir kis kis-kee baaree-mẽẽ baat-ciit huii.  
 B: deehaat-kee baaree-mẽẽ. woo deehaat-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ.  
 A: acchaa, too aap bhii un-kee saath jaaẽẽ, deehaat deekhnee-kee liyee.  
 B: jii hãã, guptaa-jii-nee kahaa, ki Ÿaayad aglee soomwaar-koo mujhee bhii saath lee calẽẽgee.
9.       Improvise longer telephone conversations about the following topics:  
 1. a trip to Jaipur; 2. a trip to Fatehpur Sikri; 3. an evening at the coffee house.

Unit VI Part B

Conversation

- 1 dillii-mēē Teeliifuun-par baat-ciit.  
2 deehaat deekhnee-kee baaree-mēē.
- 
- 3 wideešii: ham loog sooc rahee thee, ki soolah-koo calēēgee. too calnaa pakkaa hai, na?  
4 hindustaanii: jii hāā, pakkaa hai. māī thii khaalii hūū. Šaniicar-koo calaa jaaee, aur soomwaar yaa mangal-koo waapas aayaa jaaee.  
5 wideešii: jaisii aap-kii icchaa.  
6 hindustaanii: acchaa, phir jitnii jaldii calēēgee, utnii hii kam bhiir mileegii.  
7 wideešii: meerii raay-mēē saat bajee-kii bas-see calaa jaaee.  
8 hindustaanii: Thiik raheegaa. magar paunee saat bajee-tak aDDee-par zaruur pahūc jaanaa caahiye.
- 
- 9 raastee-mēē joo naagal naam-kaa gāāw hai, wah deekhnee laayak hai.  
10 wideešii: too kyōō na is baar wahāā kuch deer-kee liyee rukēē.  
11 hindustaanii: yah too baRaa acchaa wicaar hai. mujhee bhii deehaat deekhnee-mēē dilcaspī hai.  
12 wideešii: ham kis samay wahāā pahūcēēgee.  
13 hindustaanii: kam-see kam Dhaaii ghanTee lagēēgee. saaRhee nau bajee-tak too awašy pahūc jaaēēgee.  
14 wideešii: hāā, nahīī too das bajee-kee baad garam hawaa calnee lageegii.
- 
- 15 hindustaanii: aap-nee kabhiī lassii pii hai?  
16 wideešii: pataa nahīī lassii kyaa ciiz hootii hai?  
17 hindustaanii: dahii-mēē baraf, ciinii aur masaalaa milaa-kar lassii banaaii jaatii hai.
-

- 18 wideešii: doo pahar-kee khaanee-kee liyee kyaa karẽẽgee.  
19 hindustaanii: kyõõ, kyaa khaanaa zaruurii hai? zyaadaa khaanee-see  
mooTee hoo jaaẽẽgee.  
20 wideešii: magar bhuukh too lageegii hii.  
21 hindustaanii: acchaa. tab aDDee-par joo bhii dukaan hoogii, usii-mẽẽ  
khaa lẽẽgee.
- 

- 22 sab kuch mileegaa, samoosee, caawal, goošt aur taazii naan.  
23 wideešii: yah naan kis-koo kahtee hãĩ.  
24 hindustaanii: naan eek tarah-kii rooTii hootii hai, jis-koo tanuur-mẽẽ  
banaatee hãĩ.  
25 wideešii: acchaa, too ĩaniicar-koo mulaakaat hoogii. k̥huub sair karẽẽgee.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

W: wideeṣii  
H: hindustaanii

- |      |  |   |
|------|--|---|
| 1    | <u>dillii-mēē Teeliifuun par-baat-ciit.</u>  | <u>Telephone conversation in Delhi.</u>   |
| 2    | <u>deehaat deekhnee-kee baaree-mēē.</u>  | <u>About a trip in the country.</u>   |
|      | soocnaa  | to think  |
|      | pakkā  | settled, established  |
|      | calnaa pakkaa hai  | (we'll) certainly go  |
| 3 W: | <u>ham loog sooc rahee thee, ki soolah-koo calēṣṣee, too calnaa pakkaa hai, na?</u>  | <u>We were thinking of going on the 16th; we're definitely going, aren't we?</u>                        |
|      | khaalii  | free (adj)  |
| 4 H: | <u>jii hāṣ, pakkaa hai. māī bhii khaalii hūū. Sanicar-koo calaa jāaee, aur soomwaar yaa mangal-koo waapas aayaa jāaee.</u> | <u>Yes that's definite. I am also free. We might leave on Saturday and return on Monday or Tuesday.</u> |
|      | icchaa   | desire (f)  |
| 5 W: | <u>jaisii aap-kii icchaa.</u>  | <u>Whatever you say.</u>  |
|      | jitnaa   | as much   |
| 6 H: | <u>acchaa, phir jitnii jaldii calēṣṣee, utnii hii kam bhiiR mileegii.</u>  | <u>Yes, the earlier we leave, the less of a crowd there will be.</u>                                    |
|      | raay   | opinion, advice (f)   |
| 7 W: | <u>meerii raay-mēē saat bajee-kii bas-see calaa jāaee.</u>   | <u>I think we should leave by the 7 o'clock bus.</u>  |
|      | magar  | but   |
|      | aDDaa  | (bus) stand   |
| 8 H: | <u>Thiik raheegaa. magar paunee saat bajee-tak aDDee-par zaruur pahūc jāanaa caahiye.</u>                                  | <u>That'll be O.K. But we must be sure to get to the stand by 6:45.</u>                                 |

- naagal  
laayak
- 9 H: raastee-mēē joo naagal naam-kaa gāw hai, wah deekhnee laayak hai.
- is baar  
kuch deer-kee liyee
- 10 W: too kyōō na is baar wahāā kuch deer-kee liyee rukēē.
- dilcaspīi  
wicaar
- 11 H: yah too baRaa accha? wicaar hai. mujhee bhī deehaat deekhnee-mēē dilcaspīi hai.
- kis samay
- 12 W: ham kis samay wahāā pahūcēēgee.
- kam-see kam  
awaśy
- 13 H: kam-see kam Dhaaii ghanTee lagēēgee. saarhee nau bajee-tak too awaśy pahūc jaaēēgee.
- hawaa  
nahī too
- 14 W: hāā, nahī too das bajee-kee baad garam hawaa calnee lageegīi.
- kabhīi  
lassīi
- 15 H: aap-nee kabhīi lassīi pii hai?
- 16 W: pataa nahī lassīi kyaa ciiz hootīi hai?
- dahīi  
baraf  
ciinii  
masaalaa  
milaanaa
- 17 H: dahīi-mēē baraf ciinii aur masaalaa milaa-kar lassīi banaaii jaatii hai.

- Nagal (a village) (m)  
worthy
- There is a village called Nagal that is worth seeing on the way.
- this time  
for a while
- Then why not stop there for a while this time.
- interest  
idea (m)
- That's a very good idea. I am also interested in seeing the country.
- what time  
What time will we get there?
- at least  
certainly
- It'll take about two and a half hours. We ought to get there by 9:30 at least.
- wind (f)  
otherwise
- Yes; otherwise after 10 o'clock there'll be a hot wind.
- sometimes  
lassi (drink)
- Have you ever drunk lassi?
- I don't know what lassi is.
- curds, yogurt (m)  
ice, snow (f)  
sugar  
spices, ingredients  
to mix, add
- Lassi is made by mixing ice and sugar and spices with yogurt.

- |       |  |   |
|-------|--|---|
|       | doo pahar-kaa khaanaa  | the noon meal   |
| 18 W: | <u>doo pahar-kee khaanee-kee</u><br><u>liyee kyaa karēēgee.</u>                                      | <u>What will we do about lunch?</u>   |
|       | zaruurii   | necessary   |
|       | mooTaa   | fat   |
| 19 H: | <u>kyōō, kyaa khaanaa zaruurii</u><br><u>hai? zyaadaa khaanee-see</u><br><u>mooTee hoo jaaēēgee.</u> | <u>Why, will we have to eat? We'll</u><br><u>get fat from eating too much.</u>                      |
|       | bhuukh   | hunger (f)  |
| 20 W: | <u>magar bhuukh too lageegii hii.</u>  | <u>But we're sure to get hungry.</u>  |
|       | tab  | then  |
|       | joo bhii   | whatever  |
| 21 H: | <u>acchaa. tab aDDee-par joo</u><br><u>bhii dukaan hoogii, usii-mēē</u><br><u>khaa lēēgee.</u>       | <u>O.K. There must be some kind of</u><br><u>shop at the stand; we can eat</u><br><u>there.</u>     |
|       | samoosaa   | vegetable or meat pie   |
|       | naan   | nan (f)   |
| 22 H: | <u>sab kuch mileegaa, samoosee,</u><br><u>caawal, goošt aur taazii</u><br><u>naan.</u>               | <u>We can get all sorts of things</u><br><u>there: samosas, rice, meat and</u><br><u>fresh nan.</u> |
| 23 W: | <u>yah naan kis-koo kahtee hāī.</u>  | <u>What do you mean by 'naan'?</u>  |
|       | tanuur   | brick oven (m)  |
| 24 H: | <u>naan eek tarah-kii rooTii</u><br><u>hootii hai, jis-koo tanuur-</u><br><u>mēē banaatee hāī.</u>   | <u>Nan is a kind of flat bread which</u><br><u>is made in a brick oven.</u>                         |
|       | ḵhuub  | well, really fine (adv)   |
| 25 W: | <u>acchaa, too ḡaniicar-koo</u><br><u>mulaakaat hoogii. ḵhuub</u><br><u>sair karēēgee.</u>           | <u>O.K., then we'll meet on Saturday.</u><br><u>We'll have a really good trip.</u>                  |

## Cultural Notes

Unless an automobile can be hired, almost the sole means of seeing Indian villages by public transportation is the bus. The village is usually situated several hundred yards away from the road, the bus stand, and the bazaar which may have grown up about the bus stand, but easily accessible from them. The traditional North Indian village is a complex of adobe dwellings facing inward toward each other and presenting a walled and windowless exterior on all sides. Narrow dirt lanes lead into the village between the houses. The traditional sign of prosperity in these villages is a brick house, or even more splendid, a two-story brick house. Where economic progress brought by the Five-Year Plans and by the introduction of commercial agriculture, as in sugar cane, has brought prosperity, a preponderance of brick houses may be seen and the main lanes of the village if not all village streets are paved.

Although Western-style food is easily obtainable in Indian cities, most Indians prefer traditional home cooking and in some areas it is a highly developed art. Indian restaurants rarely do justice to Indian food and an invitation for an Indian meal at the home of a friend is both a compliment and a treat. The ordinary Indian meal consists of rootii (unleavened bread), which may be baked (capaatii), pan-fried or deep-fried (puurii); rice may substitute for bread or both may be eaten at a meal. Also eaten are vegetable curry (sabzii), yogurt (called dahii or curd in Indian English), meat or fish curry occasionally among those who are not prevented from eating them by economic or ritual considerations; and usually daal. daal is the main source of protein for most North Indians and may be made from any of the bean-like yellow legumes, such as yellow split peas, garbanzo beans and lentils. These are boiled to the consistency of mashed potatoes or thick soup, to which spices and oil are added; ghii (clarified butter) is usually poured over.

A number of snack foods are available for travellers at stations and stands, including samoosaa (triangular envelopes of bread dough stuffed with meat or vegetables and fried in deep fat), pakauRaa (pieces of vegetable dipped in batter and deep fried), various salted and deep-fried mixtures similar to those eaten in the United States, though more heavily seasoned; and sweets. Despite the primitive surroundings in which these foods are often prepared, the traveller can usually watch them being fried before his eyes, and they are thus safe to eat.

Tea is the most common drink in India, served with milk and sugar. Coffee is available only in larger cities in North India but is a specialty of South India. A common hot-weather drink, aside from bottled soft drinks, is lassii, made of yogurt, sugar and spices shaken with crushed ice until it foams.

The method of preparing all these dishes varies greatly from area to area and family to family, particularly with regard to the amount and selection of spices. Certain regions of India are known for the extremely "hot" foods they serve, others for such regional preferences as that of Bengalis for fish. Food and food habits provide topics for endless conversation and constitute a focus for local loyalties.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
icchaa	marzii	desire, wish
awaŷy	zaruur	certainly
samay (m)	wakt (m)	time
prakaar (m)	tarah (f)	manner
is prakaar	is tarah	in this way

### 2. Related pairs

milnaa	meet	milaanaa	mix (cause to meet)
zaruur	certainly	zaruurii	necessary
Teeliifuun	phone	foon karnaa	to telephone
awaŷy	certainly	aawaŷyak	necessary

### 3. Dates

aaj kaun taariikh hai.	What's the date today?
aaj baarah taariikh hai.	Today is the 12th.
baarah taariikh-koo.	On the 12th.

### 4. Additional common foods

capaatii	flat wheat bread
daal	generic name for split peas, lentils, garbanzo, etc.
mirc	pepper
pakauRaa	vegetable dipped in batter and fried in deep fat
sabzii	vegetable, or vegetable curry
puurii	'capaatii' fried in deep fat
ghii	clarified butter
samoosaa	deep-fried vegetable or meat pie

### 5. Numbers

iksaTh	61	chiyaasaTh	66
baasaTh	62	saRsaTh	67
tirsaTh	63	aRsaTh	68
caũsaTh	64	unhattar	69
pāĩsaTh	65	sattar	70



## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

#### A. Substitution drill

How many hours did it take to go up to Saharanpur?

(sahaaranpur)-tak jaanee-mēē kitnee ghanTee lagee.  
dillii  
doost-kee ghar  
nadii-kee pul  
sākrii galiyōō  
siikrii-kee khāDhar  
bas-kee aDDee  
deehaat-kee gāāw

#### B. Substitution drill

How much time did you spend in stopping in Jaipur?

(jaipur-mēē ruknee-mēē) kitnaa waḡt lagaa.  
lassii piinee-mēē  
Teeliifuun-par baat karnee-mēē  
lauTnee-mēē  
samoosaa khaanee-mēē  
kapRee badalnee-mēē  
sair karnee-mēē

#### C. Substitution drill

How much time did you spend in talking on the phone?

(aap-koo) foon karnee-mēē kitnee ghanTee lagee.  
saahab-koo  
laRkiyōō-koo  
bairee-koo  
yaatrii-koo  
wideeṣiyōō-koo  
mujhee  
un-koo

#### D. Individual conversational response

Instructor: How long did it take you to go to Saharanpur?

1st Student: But I did not go to Saharanpur.

Instructor: sahaaranpur jaanee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.

1st Student: leekin sahaaranpur too nahīī gayaa.

Instructor: Teeliifuun-par baat karnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.

2nd Student: leekin Teeliifuun-par baat too nahīī kii.

Instructor

ghar-see lauTnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 baat sunaanee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 masjid deekhnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 samoosaa khaanee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 aDDee-par baiThnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 hazrat ganj ghumnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 zaruurii kaam karnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 deehaat deekhnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.  
 dahii-mēē ciinii milaanee-mēē kitnaa samay lagaa.

## Pattern 2

## A. Substitution drill

I am very interested in seeing the country.

(mujhee) deehaat deekhnee-mēē bahut dilcaspī hai.  
 sab wideeśiyōō-koo  
 ŷahar-kee rahnee-waalōō-koo  
 meeree doostōō-koo  
 amriikan yaatrii-koo  
 singh saahab-koo  
 us aadmī-koo  
 un laRkiyōō-koo

## B. Substitution drill

mujhee (deehaat deekhnee)-mēē bahut dilcaspī hai.  
 saamaan khariidnee  
 loogōō-see baat karnee  
 doostōō-see mulaakaat karnee  
 urduu-kī kitaab paRhnee  
 rooTīi khaanee  
 caay piinee  
 caay-mēē ciinii milaanee  
 paisaa badalnee

## C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Will you see the country too?

1st Student: Yes, I am very interested in seeing the country.

Instructor: kyaa aap deehaat bhī deekhēēgee?

1st Student: jī hāā, mujhee deehaat deekhnee-mēē bahut dilcaspī hai.

Instructor: kyaa aap hindustaanīi khaanaa bhī khaaēēgee?

2nd Student: jī hāā, mujhee hindustaanīi khaanaa khaanee-mēē bahut dilcaspī hai.

### Instructor

kyaa aap bas-see bhii jaaẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap aDDee-par bhii rukẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap naagal-kii bhii sair karẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap samoosee bhii khaaẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap mahal bhii deekhẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap udhar bhii rahẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap phuul bhii caRhaaẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap hindii bhii boolẽẽgee?

### Pattern 3

#### A. Chain drill

Instructor: We thought we were going on the 16th.  
1st Student: Then we're definitely going, aren't we?

Instructor: ham-nee soocaa, ki soolah-koo calẽẽgee.  
1st Student: too soolah-koo calnaa pakkaa hai na?

Instructor: ham-nee soocaa, ki naagal-mẽẽ rukẽẽgee.  
2nd Student: too naagal-mẽẽ ruknaa pakkaa hai na?

### Instructor

ham-nee soocaa, ki kaašii-mẽẽ doo din Thairẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki kursii yahãã-see nikaalẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki baazaar-kii sair karẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki baahar kheelẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki naee juutee mǎgaaẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki is pustak-koo paRhẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki baahar rahẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki panDit-jii-see mulaakaat karẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki dukaan udhar lagaaẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki lassii banaaẽẽgee.

#### 3. Transformation drill

### Instructor

I thought the show was very good.

mǎĩ-nee soocaa, ki kheel bahut acchaa thaa.  
mǎĩ-nee soocaa, ki lassii bahut acchii lagii.  
us-nee soocaa, ki naagal bahut chooTaa-saa gǎãw hai.  
unhõõ-nee soocaa, ki phuul caRhaanaa bahut acchaa riwaaz hai.  
wideešii-nee soocaa, ki soolah taariikh-koo lauT aaẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki yah baRaa acchaa wicaar hai.  
singh saahab-nee soocaa, ki naagal deekhnee laayaḡ hai.  
wideešii-nee soocaa, ki garam hawaa calnee-see takliif hoogii.  
us-nee soocaa, ki lassii tamaašaa hai.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki samoosaa khaanee laayaḡ hai.  
widyaarthiyõõ-nee soocaa, ki khuub sair karẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki kuch caay mǎgaaẽẽgee.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki wideešii binaa duudh-kii caay piitee hǎĩ.  
ham-nee soocaa, ki samoosee-mẽẽ goošt Daalnaa hai.

Class

I too thought the show was very good.

meeraa bhii khayaal thaa, ki kheel bahut acchaa thaa.

meeraa bhii khayaal thaa, ki lassii bahut acchii lageegii.

meeraa bhii khayaal thaa, ki naagal bahut chooTaa-saa gāāw hai.  
etc.

## Pattern 4

## A. Chain drill

Instructor: What is the date today?

1st Student: Today is the sixteenth.

Instructor: aaj kaun taariikh hai.

1st Student: aaj soolah taariikh hai.

Instructor: kal kaun taariikh thii.

2nd Student: kal pandrah taariikh thii.

Instructor

pichlee haftee kaun taariikh thii.

parsōō kaun taariikh thii.

soomwaar-koo kaun taariikh thii.

Continue with different dates in the past.

## B. Repeat drill A in the future.

Instructor: What will be the date tomorrow?

1st Student: Tomorrow will be the seventeenth.

Instructor: kal kaun taariikh hoogii.

1st Student: kal sattrah taariikh hoogii.

Instructor: aglee haftee kaun taariikh hoogii.

2nd Student: aglee haftee \_\_\_\_\_ taariikh hoogii.

## C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What date will we leave, on the 16th?

1st Student: Yes, we'll leave on the sixteenth and come back on the 18th.

Instructor: kis taariikh-koo calēēgee, soolah-koo?

1st Student: hāā, soolah-koo calaa jaaee aur aThaarah-koo lauTaa jaaee.

Instructor: kis taariikh-koo calēēgee, baaiis-koo?

2nd Student: hāā, baaiis-koo calaa jaaee aur caubiis-koo lauTaa jaaee.

Continue with different dates.

Pattern 5

jitnaa 'as much', is paired with utnaa as jo with woo and jab with tab or too.

A. Substitution drill

The earlier we leave, the less of a crowd there will be.

jitnii jaldii (calēēgee), utnii-hii kam bhiir mileegii.  
lauTēēgee  
waapas aaēēgee  
calee jaaēēgee  
uupar caRhēēgee  
baiThēēgee

B. Substitution-agreement drill

We'll give you as many saris as we have.

jitnii (saaRiyāā) hāī, utnii hii dee dēēgee.  
khaanaa  
paisaa  
samoosee  
pakkee seeb  
baraf  
namak

C. Substitution-agreement drill

You'll get as much money as you give things.

jitnaa saamaan dēēgee, utnaa (paisaa) mileegaa.  
rupae  
miThaaiyāā  
samoosee  
rooTiyāā  
namak

D. Substitution-agreement drill

You'll get as many things as you give money.

jitnaa paisaa dēēgee, utnaa hii (saamaan) mileegaa.  
saaRiyāā  
samoosee  
rooTiyāā  
phuul  
kapRee

E. Conversational response drill

Grammar VIB

Instructor

How many saris will you give?

kitnii saaRiyāā dee dēēgee?  
kitnaa khaanaa dee dēēgee?  
kitnaa paisaa dee dēēgee?  
kitnee samoosee dee dēēgee?  
kitnee pakkee seeb dee dēēgee?  
kitnii baraf dee dēēgee?  
kitnii kitaabēē dee dēēgee?  
kitnaa samay dee dēēgee?

Class

We'll give as many saris as we have.

jitnii saariyāā hāī, utnii hii dee dēēgee.  
jitnaa khaanaa hai, utnaa hii dee dēēgee.  
jitnaa paisaa hai, utnaa hii dee dēēgee.  
etc.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor

How many things will we get?

kitnaa saamaan mileegaa?  
kitnii miThaaiyāā milēēgii?  
kitnee rupae milēēgee?  
kitnee samoosee milēēgee?  
kitnii rooTiyāā milēēgii?  
kitnee phuul milēēgee?  
kitnee kapRee milēēgee?  
kitnaa dahii mileegaa?  
kitnii naan mileegii?

Class

You'll get as many things as you give money.

jitnaa paisaa dēēgee, utnaa hii saamaan mileegaa.  
jitnaa paisaa dēēgee, utnii hii miThaaiyāā milēēgii.  
etc.

Pattern 6

A. Substitution drill

Note the special meaning of nahīī too or nahīī plus verb plus too at the beginning of a clause referring to a preceding statement.

We must arrive by eight thirty, otherwise the hot wind will start.

saaRhee aaTh-tak pahūcnaa hai, nahīī too (garam hawaa calnee lageegii).  
khaanaa na mileegaa.  
mahal band hoogaa.  
wee nahīī hōōgee.  
bhuukh lageegii.  
kheel ŷurru hoo jaaeegaa  
gaaRii calii jaaeegii.  
paisaa nahīī mileegaa.

B. Substitution drill

We'll go before eight thirty, otherwise it'll be hot.

saaRhee aaTh-kee pahlee (jaaēēgee), nahīī too garmii lageegii.  
lauTēēgee  
waapas aaēēgee  
sair karēēgee  
rooTii khaaēēgee  
milēēgee  
foon karēēgee

### C. Conversational response drill

#### Instructor

We have to go at eight.

aath bajee jaanaa hai.  
aath bajee pahūcnaa hai.  
aath bajee lauṭnaa hai.  
aath bajee foon karnaa hai.  
aath bajee kaam ṣurū karnaa hai.  
aath bajee sair karnii hai.  
aath bajee saamaan lee aanaa hai.  
aath bajee kapṛaa badalnaa hai.  
aath bajee singh saahab-see milnaa hai.  
aath bajee caay māgaanii hai.  
aath bajee baat sunaani hai.  
aath bajee masaala Daalnaa hai.  
aath bajee ciṭṭhi likhni hai.

#### Class

Yes, if we don't go we won't get another chance.

hāā, nahī jaaēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī pahūcēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī lauṭēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī karēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī ṣurū karēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī karēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī lee aaēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī badalēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī milēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī māgaāēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī sunaaēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī Daalēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.  
hāā, nahī likhēēgee too phir maukaa nahī mileegaa.

### Pattern 7

#### A. Chain drill

Instructor: Have you ever had lassi?

1st Student: What is lassi?

2nd Student: Lassi is a kind of a drink.\*

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee kabhi lassi pii hai?

1st Student: lassi kyaa ciiz hootii hai.

2nd Student: lassi eek tarah-kaa khaanaa hai.

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee kabhi yahā-kce mahal-koo deekhaa hai?

1st Student: mahal kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.

2nd Student: mahal too eek tarah-kaa makaan hai.

Instructor

kyaa aap-nee kabhii saaRii deekhii?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii namkiin khaayaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii kaRaaũũ deekhaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii bas deekhii?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii kurtaa pahanaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii peeRee deekhee?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii beer khaayaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii rikšaa deekhaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii bas-kaa aDDaa deekhaa?  
 kyaa aap-nee kabhii caay-měẽ ciinii mlaaii?

\* Hindi-Urdu uses khaanaa here.

B. Repeat drill A adding a qualifying phrase to the last answer.

Instructor: Have you ever had samosas?  
 1st Student: What are samosas?  
 2nd Student: Samosas are a kind of food, which they eat at the bus stop.

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee kabhii samoosaa khaayaa?  
 1st Student: samoosaa kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
 2nd Student: samoosaa eek tarah-kaa khaanaa hai, isee aDDee-par khaatee hãĩ.

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee kabhii mahal-koo deekhaa hai?  
 2nd Student: mahal kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
 3rd Student: mahal eek tarah-kaa makaan hai, jis-měẽ raajaa rahtee thee.

etc.

Pattern 8 Time and number review.

A. Chain drill

Instructor: What time is it?  
 1st Student: It's two o'clock. What time will it be twenty minutes from now?  
 2nd Student: It will be two twenty. What time will it be ten minutes after two twenty?

Instructor: kyaa bajaa hai?  
 1st Student: doo bajee hãĩ. biis minaaT-kee baad kyaa bajaa hoogaa.  
 2nd Student: doo baj-kar biis minaaT hõõgee. das minaaT-kee baad kyaa bajaa hoogaa.

Continue around the class with different time intervals.



## Rapid Response

### Group 1

wideeSii kyaa sooc rahee thee.  
kyaa smith saahab aur singh saahab tããgee-see jaaẽẽgee?  
doonõõ loog kitnee bajee-kii bas-see jaaẽẽgee.  
aDDee-par kab-tak pahũcnaa caahiyee thaa.  
raastee-mẽẽ kaun-sii jagah deekhnee laayak hai.  
naagal-tak jaanee-mẽẽ kitnee ghanTee lagẽẽgee.  
bas naagal kitnee bajee pahũctii hai.  
kitnee bajee-kee baad garam hawaa calnee lagtii hai.  
kyaa smith saahab-nee pahlee kabhi lassii pii hai?  
lassii kaisee banaaii jaatii hai.  
smith saahab aur singh saahab doo pahar-kaa khaanaa kahãã khaaẽẽgee.  
kyaa bas-kee aDDee-par khaanee-kii dukaan hai?  
naan kis-koo kahtee hãĩ.  
naan kis ciiz-mẽẽ banaatee hãĩ.  
singh saahab aur smith saahab-kii aglii mulaakaat kab hoogii.

### Group 2

kis taariikh-koo smith saahab aur singh saahab-kaa deehaat jaanee-kaa wicaar hai.  
kyaa Šaniicar-koo singh saahab-koo bahut kaam hai?  
wee doonõõ kis din lauT aaẽẽgee.  
kis samay bas-mẽẽ bhiiR kam mileegii.  
kitnee bajee-tak doonõõ-koo aDDee-par pahũc jaanaa caahiyee.  
naagal kahãã-par hai.  
bas kab-tak gããw-mẽẽ pahũctii hai.  
kyaa doonõõ loog dillii-mẽẽ rukẽẽgee?  
naagal-mẽẽ kyõõ rukẽẽgee.  
kyaa das bajee-kee baad bahut garmii hoo jaatii hai?  
kyaa smith saahab har rooz lassii piitee hãĩ?  
khaanaa khaanaa kyõõ zaruurii hoogaa.  
dahii-mẽẽ kyaa kyaa ciizẽẽ milaa-kar lassii banaatee hãĩ.  
aDDee-kii dukaan-par khaanee-kee liyee kyaa kyaa miltaa hai.  
kis samay phir mulaakaat hoogii.

## Situational Response

### wideesii:

kyaa aap soolah-koo meeree saath cal sakẽẽgee?  
calnaa too pakkaa hai na?  
kyaa bahut bhiiR mileegii, bas-par?  
aap-koo kab lauTnaa caahiyee.  
aDDee-par kab tak pahũcnaa hai.  
naagal kidhar hoogaa.  
kyaa aap deehaat bhii dikhaa sakẽẽgee?  
aDDaa kis ciiz-koo kahtee hãĩ.  
kyaa aap-koo bhii deehaat deekhnee-mẽẽ dilcaspai hai?  
naagal-tak jaanee-mẽẽ kitnaa samay lageegaa.  
dahii kis ciiz-see banaayaa jaataa hai.  
kyaa doo pahar-mẽẽ aap-koo bhuukh nahĩĩ lageegii?  
aDDee-kii dukaan-mẽẽ kyaa kyaa ciizẽẽ milẽẽgii.  
daal kis ciiz-koo kahtee hãĩ?

### hindustaanii:

aap ʒaniicar-kee din too khaalii hõõgee?  
kis bas-see calẽẽgee.  
aap-koo bas-mẽẽ too takliif nahĩĩ hoogii?  
kyaa aap deehaat bhii deekhnaa caahtee hãĩ?  
ham naagal rukẽẽ, yaa siidhee sahaaranpur calẽẽ.  
ham raastee-mẽẽ kitnee samay rukẽẽ.  
kyaa aap-koo hindustaanii khaanaa pasand hai?  
aap-nee kabhi naan khaai?  
aap-koo garam mausam-mẽẽ too zaruur pyaas lageegii?  
yah lassii aap-koo kaisii lagii?  
kyaa aap-kee dees-mẽẽ bhii naan miltii hai?  
kyaa aap-kee dees-mẽẽ bhii garam hawaa caltii hai?  
aap-koo kis din waapas jaanaa hai.  
kyaa aap deehaatii loogõõ-see bhii baat kar sakẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap-kee liyee hooTal-see kuch wideesii khaanaa lee aaẽẽgee?

## Review Conversations

### safar-kee baaree-mēē

1. A: aap aglee itwaar-koo khaalii hāī.  
B: jii hāā, kooii kaam hai kyaa?  
A: nahīī, sooc rahaa thaa, ki mathuraa calaa jaaee.  
B: baRaa acchaa wicaar hai, mujhee us din kooii kaam nahīī hai.  
A: agar calnaa hoogaa, too chah bajee-kii bas-see calēēgee.  
B: Thiik raheegaa, us samay too bhiir bahut kam hoogii.
2. A: raastee-kee khaanee-kee baaree-mēē kyaa kiyaa jaaeegaa.  
B: wahīī bas-kee aDDee-par kuch khaa lēēgee.  
A: bas-kee aDDee-par kyaa mileegaa?  
B: sab kuch, caawal, daal, goošt, naan aur sabziyāā.  
A: piinee-kee liyee bhii kuch mileegaa?  
B: piinee-kee liyee lassii aur caay milēēgii, yahāā-kii lassii baRii mašhuur hai.  
A: tab too Thiik hai.
3. A: māī-nee sunaa, ki aap dillii jaa rahee thee, gae nahīī kyaa?  
B: kahāā gayaa, abhii too yahīī hūū.  
A: kyaa huua, kooii khaas baat hoo gaii kyaa?  
B: nahīī, kooii khaas baat nahīī, kal jaa rahaa hūū.  
A: too is-kaa matlab hai, ki aap itwaar-koo yahāā nahīī rahēēgee.  
B: nahīī, māī brihaspatiwaar-tak waapas aaūūgaa.
4. A: too naagal jaanee-kii baat pakkii hai na?  
B: hāā, pakkii hii hai, ab too kaafii fursat hai.  
A: tab too wahāā khub sair karēēgee.  
B: hāā, aur phir wahāā-see dillii hoo-kar waapas aaēēgee.  
A: dillii-mēē aap ruknaa caahtee hāī, kyaa?  
B: nahīī, bas eek din rukēēgee, aur phir lauT aaēēgee.

baat-ciit

5. A: taaj mahal-kee baaree-mēē aap-kaa kyaa k̄hayaal hai.  
B: taaj mahal deekhnee laayaḳ hai. saarii duniyāā-see loog usee deekhnee aatee hāī.  
A: too kyōō na aglee itwaar-koo calaa jaaee.  
B: itwaar nahīī, šukrwaar yaa šaniwaar-koo caliyee.  
A: kyōō, kahīī aur jaanaa caahtee hāī kyaa?  
B: hāā, lauTtee samay siikrii bhii deekhnaa hai.  
A: too pakkaa rahaa, šukrwaar-kii šaam-koo calēēgee.
6. A: kyaa aap warmaa jii-see mīlee hāī?  
B: jii hāā, abhii too pichlii baar hii mulaakaat huii thii, dillii-mēē.  
A: wee kal yahāā aa rahee hāī, subah-kii Treen-see.  
B: yahāā kahāā Thairēēgee, aur kab tak rahēēgee.  
A: mangalwaar-tak rahēēgee aur Thairēēgee too meeree hii saath.  
B: tab too un-see phir mulaakaat hoogii aur k̄huub baatēē hōōgii.
7. A: kyaa aap-koo lassii pasand hai?  
B: wah kyaa ciiz hootii hai.  
A: wah piinee-kee liyee hai, dahii-mēē ciinii, baraḳ aur masaalaa milaatee hāī.  
B: kyaa is-mēē bahut masaalaa Daalaa jaataa hai?  
A: hāā, masaalee-kee binaa too pasand nahīī aaeegii.  
B: mujhee zyaadaa ciinii too pasand nahīī. māī caay bhii ciinii-kee binaa binaa piitaa hūū.
8. A: sunaaiyee, hindustaan-kaa k̄haas khaanaa kaun-saa hai.  
B: yahāā too har eek jagah-kaa k̄haas khaanaa hai.  
A: eek doo naam too bataaiyee. bas-kee aDDōo-par kyaa miltā hai.  
B: lassii miltii hai, aur samoosee aur šaayad naaī.  
A: ham-nee too capaatii-kii bahut taariif sunii hai, wah kyaa ciiz hai.  
B: wah eek tarah-kii rooTii hootii hai, joo har eek ghar-mēē rooz banaaii jaatii hai.

Unit VII Part A

Conversation

- 1 yaatriyōō-see baat-ciit.
- 2 paTnaa, gangaa-kee sTiimar-par yaatraa.
- 
- 3 wideešii: kahiye, sTiimar chuuTnee-mēē abhii kitnii deer hai.
- 4 saathii: kooii biis minat aur hāī.
- 5 wideešii: too yahīī khaRee hoo jaaēē, andar too bahut garmii hoogii.
- 6 saathii: hāā, jab sTiimar calnee lageegaa, too bhiitar cal-kee baiTh jaaēēgee.
- 
- 7 wideešii: aaj too kal-see kuch zyaadaa garmii maaluum hootii hai.
- 8 saathii: hāā, dhuup kaafii teez hai. aur baariš-kee bhii kooii aasaar nahīī nazar aatee.
- 9 wideešii: julaaii-kaa mahiinaa hai. ab-tak too barsaat šuruu hoo jaanii caahiye.
- 10 saathii: hoo too jaanii caahiye. magar šuruu kahāā huii hai. rooz hii aasmaan saaf rahtaa hai.
- 
- 11 wideešii: agar eek doo din paanii baras jaataa, too šaayad mausam kuch ThanDaa hoo jaataa.
- 12 saathii: aap-koo apnaa safar too jaaRee-mēē šuruu karnaa caahiye thaa.
- 13 wideešii: kyaa karēē. jaaRee-mēē too chuTTii nahīī miltii. hameešaa kuch na kuch kaam rahtaa hai.
- 
- 14 saathii: deekhiye, wahāā kinaaree-par nahaanee-waalōō-kii kitnii bhiir hai. aap-nee banaaras-kee ghaat too deekhee hāī na?
- 15 wideešii: hāā, jab banaaras-mēē thaa, too deekhnee gayaa thaa.
- 16 leekin idhar too banaaras-see kam bhiir hai.
- 17 saathii: agar banaaras jaisee ghaat ban jaatee, too yahāā bhii kaafii jantaa nahaanee aatii.
- 18 wideešii: sTiimar calnee lagaa hai. caliyee, andar cal-kee baiThaa jaaee.
-

- 19 yaatrii: aap too baRii acchii hindii booltee hãĩ. kahãã-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?
- 20 wideešii: amriikaa-see hũũ.
- 21 yaatrii: aap-kii hindii sun-kar baRaa acraj hootaa hai. aap-nee kahãã siikhii?
- 22 wideešii: kuch too wahĩĩ siikhii thii, aur kuch dillii-mẽẽ rahtee siikh lĩi.
- 23 yaatrii: yah too baRii prasanntaa-kii baat hai.
- 24 phir amriikaa-mẽẽ hindii paRhnee-kaa too acchaa prabandh hoogaa.
- 25 wideešii: ab too bahut-see loogõõ-nee hindii paRhniĩ šuruu kii hai.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

W: wideešii  
S: saathii  
Y: yaatrii

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | yaatrii  | traveller (m)  |
| 1    | <u>yaatriyôô-see baat-ciit.</u>  | <u>Talking with travellers.</u>                                      |
|      | paTnaa   | Patna (city)   |
|      | gangaa   | Ganges river (f)   |
|      | sTiimar  | steamer (m)  |
|      | yaatraa  | trip (f)   |
| 2    | <u>paTnaa, gangaa-kee sTiimar-par yaatraa.</u>   | <u>Patna, trip on a Ganges steamer.</u>                              |
|      | chuuTnaa   | to leave (trains, ships, etc.)                                       |
|      | chuuTnee-měě deer hai  | there is delay in leaving  |
| 3 W: | <u>kahiye, sTiimar chuuTnee-měě abhii kitnii deer hai.</u>                             | <u>Tell me, how much longer until the steamer leaves?</u>            |
|      | kooii biis minaaT  | about 20 minutes   |
| 4 S: | <u>kooii biis minaaT aur hãĩ.</u>  | <u>About 20 minutes more.</u>  |
|      | khaRaa hoonaa  | to stand   |
| 5 W: | <u>too yahĩĩ khaRee hoo jaaěě, andar too bahut garmii hoogii.</u>                      | <u>Then let's stand here; it is probably very hot inside.</u>        |
|      | bhiitar  | inside   |
|      | cal-kee  | having gone (cal-kar)  |
|      | baiTh jaanaa   | to sit down  |
| 6 S: | <u>hãã, jab sTiimar calnee lageegaa, too bhiitar cal-kee baiTh jaaěěgee.</u>           | <u>Yes, when the steamer starts moving we'll go in and sit down.</u> |
| 7 W: | <u>aaj too kal-see kuch zyaadaa garmii maaluum hootii hai.</u>                         | <u>It seems to be a little warmer today than yesterday.</u>          |
|      | baariš   | rain (f)   |
|      | aasaar   | indication (m)   |
|      | nazar  | sight (f)  |
|      | nazar aanaa  | come into view   |
| 8 S: | <u>hãã, dhuup kaafii teez hai. aur baariš-kee bhii kooii aasaar nahĩĩ nazar aatee.</u> | <u>Yes, there's a very strong sun and no signs of rain yet.</u>      |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| julaaii   | July  |
| mahiinaa  | month   |
| barsaat   | rainy season (f)  |
| 9 W: <u>julaaii-kaa mahiinaa hai.</u><br><u>ab-tak too barsaat suruu</u><br><u>hoo jaanii caahiye.</u>  | <u>It's already July; the rainy</u><br><u>season should be starting</u><br><u>by now.</u>   |
| magar   | but (conj)  |
| aasmaan   | sky (m)   |
| 10 S: <u>hoo too jaanii caahiye.</u><br><u>magar suruu kahãã hui</u><br><u>hai. rooz hii aasmaan saaf</u><br><u>rahtaa hai.</u>                               | <u>It certainly should have started,</u><br><u>but it hasn't. The sky is clear</u><br><u>every day.</u>                                 |
| eek doo din   | a couple of days  |
| barasnaa  | to rain   |
| baras jaauaa  | to rain   |
| mausam  | weather (m)   |
| 11 W: <u>agar eek doo din paanii</u><br><u>baras jaataa, too saayad</u><br><u>mausam kuch ThanDaa hoo</u><br><u>jaataa.</u>                                   | <u>If it had rained for a couple</u><br><u>of days, then it probably would</u><br><u>have cooled off.</u>                               |
| jaaRaa  | winter, cold  |
| 12 S: <u>aap-koo apnaa safar too jaaRee-</u><br><u>mẽẽ suruu karnaa caahiye thaa.</u>   | <u>You should have started your trip</u><br><u>in the winter.</u>   |
| chuTTii   | vacation, free time   |
| hameeãaa  | always  |
| kuch na kuch  | something or other  |
| 13 W: <u>kyaa karẽẽ. jaaRee-mẽẽ too</u><br><u>chuTTii nahĩĩ miltii.</u><br><u>hameeãaa kuch na kuch kaam</u><br><u>rahtaa hai.</u>                            | <u>What can I do? I have no free</u><br><u>time in the winter. There is</u><br><u>always some work to do.</u>                           |
| kinaaraa  | shore, side   |
| ghaaT   | riverbank, bathing area (m)   |
| nahaanaa  | to bathe  |
| 14 S: <u>deekhiye, wahãã kinaaree-par</u><br><u>nahaanee-waaloõ-kii kitnii</u><br><u>bhiir hai. aap-nee banaaras-</u><br><u>kee ghaaT too deekhee hãĩ na?</u> | <u>Look how many people there are</u><br><u>bathing on the ghat. You've</u><br><u>seen the ghats at Banaras,</u><br><u>haven't you?</u> |
| 15 W: <u>hãã, jab banaaras-mẽẽ thaa, too</u><br><u>deekhnee gayaa thaa.</u>   | <u>Yes, when I was in Banaras I</u><br><u>went to see them.</u>   |
| 16 W: <u>leekin idhar too banaaras-see</u><br><u>kam bhiir hai.</u>   | <u>But the crowd here is smaller</u><br><u>than at Banaras.</u>   |



- |       |  |  |
|-------|--|--|
|       | banaaras jaisee ghaat<br>jantaa  | ghats like those in Banaras<br>public (r)  |
| 17 S: | <u>agar banaaras jaisee ghaat ban<br/>jaatee, too yahāā bhii kaafii<br/>jantaa nahaanee aatii.</u> | <u>If ghats like those in Banaras had<br/>been built, then more people<br/>would come here to bathe.</u> |
| 18 W: | <u>stiimar calnee lagaa hai.<br/>caliyee, andar cal-kee<br/>baiThaa jaaee.</u>                     | <u>The steamer has started to move.<br/>Let's go in and sit down.</u>                                    |
|       | rahnee-waalaā  | inhabitant   |
| 19 Y: | <u>aap too baRii acchii hindii<br/>booltee hāī. kahāā-kee<br/>rahnee-waalee hāī?</u>               | <u>You speak very good Hindi. Where<br/>are you from?</u>  |
| 20 W: | <u>amriikaa-see hūū.</u>   | <u>I'm from America.</u>   |
|       | acraaj   | surprise (m)   |
| 21 Y: | <u>aap-kii hindii sun-kar baRaa<br/>acraaj hootaa hai. aap-nee<br/>kahāā siikhii?</u>              | <u>We were very surprised to hear<br/>your Hindi. Where did you<br/>learn it?</u>                        |
|       | dilii-mēē rahtee   | living in Delhi  |
| 22 W: | <u>kuch too wahī siikhii thii,<br/>aur kuch dillii-mēē rahtee<br/>siikh līi.</u>                   | <u>Some I learned there, and some<br/>I learned while staying in Delhi.</u>                              |
|       | prasanntaa   | happiness (f)  |
| 23 Y: | <u>yah too baRii prasanntaa-kii<br/>baat hai.</u>  | <u>That's really wonderful.</u>  |
|       | prabandh   | arrangement (m)  |
| 24 Y: | <u>phir amriikaa-mēē hindii paRhnee-<br/>kaa too acchaa prabandh hoogaa.</u>                       | <u>I suppose they must have good<br/>arrangements for studying Hindi<br/>in America?</u>                 |
|       | bahut-saa  | many   |
| 25 W: | <u>ab too bahut-see loogū-nee hindi<br/>paRhniī suruu kii hai.</u>                                 | <u>Many people have started studying<br/>Hindi now.</u>  |

## Cultural Notes

Patna, an important Ganges River port, is the site of Pataliputra, the ancient capital of Asoka, king of the Mauryan Empire (fourth-third centuries B.C.). It is also the modern-day administrative seat of the state of Bihar in northeastern India. The Ganges is the sacred river of Hindu mythology; and its traditional role in literature is reflected in current speech by the appellation -jii which sometimes follows its name, gangaa-jii.

Because of its location in the central Ganges plain, Patna is subject to extremes of continental South Asian climate. Indians distinguish only three seasons: garmii (the hot season), barsaat (the rainy season), and jaaRaa (the cold season). The hot season begins in early March and reaches a climax in June just before the coming of the rainy season. A hot wind, the luu, and dust storms make these weeks particularly uncomfortable, and people begin to look into the sky for signs of approaching rain. The rainy season lasts until September and is followed by another warm spell. The peak of the cold season is reached in late December and January. A brief reverse monsoon brings a short rainy season at the end of January, also called barsaat.

Two main festival seasons punctuate the Hindu year. The daṣahraa-diwaalii period follows shortly after the rainy season. A number of celebrations during this period refer to mythological themes from the Ramayana: daṣahraa celebrates in this part of India the victory of raam, an incarnation of the God wiṣNu, over raawaN, the demon king of Ceylon. The festival of lights, diwaalii, following twenty days after daṣahraa, celebrates the return of raam to his kingdom of Ayodhya after the victory in Ceylon. The name of this festival, from diwaa, an oil lamp, refers to the practice of decorating homes and gardens with hundreds of tiny oil lights or candles on the night of the festival. Though these festivals are observed in most parts of India, interpretation of their meaning varies from area to area. hoolii, which follows the spring rainy season in February, is marked by a sportive air, with carnival-like activities and dancing in the streets. Old clothes are "de rigueur" during hoolii, for young and old shower each other with colored water.

Until recently, very few Westerners spoke Hindi, and those who did usually spoke a form of bazaar Hindustani which sufficed for communications with servants but did not serve them well in contacts with educated Indians. Biharis have contributed extensively to the efflorescence of modern Hindi literature which is usually associated with Eastern U.P.; and although local Bihari dialects are quite divergent from standard Hindi, Biharis are justly proud of their ability to speak good literary Hindi, called ṣuddh Hindi. The Westerner who attempts to master elements of this style, such as some of its more Sanskritized politeness formulas, will find that his efforts are appreciated and that his contacts with educated Indians are facilitated thereby.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

#### Hindi

prabandh (m)  
yaatraa (f)  
prasanntaa (f)  
warśaa (f)  
snaan karnaa  
acraj (m)

#### Urdu

intizaam (m)  
safar (m)  
khuśii (f)  
baariś (f)  
nahaanaa  
taajjub (m)

arrangements  
travel  
happiness  
rain  
to bathe  
surprise

### 2. Related word pairs

chuuTnaa  
prasanntaa  
yaatraa (f)

to leave  
happiness  
travel

chooRnaa  
prasann  
yaatrii (m)

to leave behind  
happy  
traveller

### 3. Additional vocabulary

baadal  
paidaa hoonaa

cloud (m)  
to be born

baraf (m)  
girnaa

snow  
to fall

4. kaii, 'many', is uninflected and is used both as a pronoun and as an adjective. It should not be confused with the pronoun kooii, which is inflected and has a different meaning.

kaii loog nahaanee aae.  
kooii loog nahaanee aae.

Many people came to bathe.  
Some people came to bathe.

### 5. Months of the year

janwarīi (f)  
farwarīi (f)  
maarc (m)  
apraail (m)  
mail (f)  
juun (m)

January  
February  
March  
April  
May  
June

julaaii (f)  
agast (m)  
sitambar (m)  
aktuubar (m)  
nawambar (m)  
disambar (m)

July  
August  
September  
October  
November  
December

### 6. Numbers 70 to 85

sattar 70  
ikhattar 71  
bahattar 72  
tihattar 73  
cauhattar 74  
pachattar 75  
chihattar 76  
sathattar 77

aThhattar 78  
unaasii 79  
assii 80  
ikyaasii 81  
bayaasii 82  
tiraasii 83  
cauraasii 84  
pacaasii 85

## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

#### A. Substitution drill

How much longer until the steamer leaves?

(sTiimar chuuTnee-měě) abhi kitnii deer hai.  
gaaRii aanee-měě  
dukaan band hoonee-měě  
bas jaanee-měě  
kheel ŷuruu hoonee-měě  
kaam khatam hoonee-měě  
baariŷ hoonee-měě

#### B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: How much longer until the steamer leaves?  
1st Student: But it's not going to leave today.

Instructor: sTiimar chuuTnee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
1st Student: aaŷ too nahĩĩ chuTeegaa.

Instructor: gaaRii aanee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
2nd Student: aaŷ too nahĩĩ aaeegii.

#### Instructor

dukaan band hoonee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
bas jaanee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
kheel ŷuruu hoonee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
kaam khatam hoonee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
baariŷ hoonee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
kinaaree-par pahũcnee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
barsaat ŷuruu hoo jaanee-měě kitnii deer hai.  
ghar lauTnee-měě kitnii deer hai.

### Pattern 2

#### A. Substitution drill

Let's go in and sit down on the chair.

(bhiitar cal-kee) baiTh jaaěě, kursii-par.  
baahar cal-kee  
saamaan rakh-kee  
juutaa pahan-kee  
caay mǎgaa-kee  
kaam ŷuruu kar-kee  
kuch na kuch saamaan lee-kee  
uupar caRh-kee  
sabzii-měě mircii Daal-kee

B. Substitution drill

We were very surprised to hear your Hindi.

(aap-kii hindii sun-kar) baRaa acraj hootaa thaa.  
aap-kii urduu sun-kar  
baariś deekh-kar  
kinaaree-par pahūc-kar  
aap-kii angreezii paRh-kar  
deehaatii daal khaa-kar

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Did you hear his Hindi?

1st Student: Yes, I was very surprised when I heard his Hindi.

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee us-kii hindii sunii?

1st Student: jii hāā, us-kii hindii sun-kar baRaa acraj huaa.

Instructor: kyaa aap-nee us-kii ciTThii paRhii?

2nd Student: jii hāā, us-kii ciTThii paRh-kar baRaa acraj huaa.

Instructor

kyaa aap-nee jantaa deekhii?  
kyaa aap saamaan lee aae?  
kyaa aap-nee hindii paRhnee-kaa prabandh kiya?  
kyaa aap-nee saamaan māgaayaa?  
kyaa aap-nee us-kii sabzii khaai?  
kyaa aap sTiimar-see lauTee?  
kyaa aap-nee gangaa jii-mēē nahaayaa?

Pattern 3

A. Substitution drill

I suppose they have good arrangements for studying Hindi in America.

amriikaa-mēē (hindii paRhnee)-kaa acchaa prabandh hoogaa.  
khaanaa banaanee  
sair karnee  
rahnee  
khaanee piinee  
likhnee paRhnee  
kapRee dhoonee  
yaatraa karnee

B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: I went to Banaras and took a good tour around the town.

1st Student: They have good arrangements for taking tours in Banaras.

Instructor: māī kaaī gayaa aur k̄huub sair kii.

1st Student: wahāā too sair karnee-kaa acchaa prabandh hai.

Instructor: māī skuul gayaa aur k̄huub paRhaa.

2nd Student: wahāā too paRhnee-kaa acchaa prabandh hai.

### Instructor

māĩ lakhnauu gayaa aur k̥huub urduu boolaa.  
māĩ hazrat ganj gayaa aur k̥huub ghuumaa.  
māĩ nadii-kee kinaaree gayaa aur k̥huub nahaayaa.  
māĩ hooTal gayaa aur māĩ-nee k̥huub khaayaa.  
māĩ siikrii gayaa aur māĩ-nee k̥huub mahal deekhee.  
māĩ deehaat gayaa, aur loogōō-see k̥huub baat kii.  
māĩ masjid gayaa aur k̥huub namaaz paRhii.  
māĩ ghar gayaa aur k̥huub haath mūh dhooyaa.  
māĩ śarmaa jii-kee ghar gayaa aur k̥huub puurii banaaii.

### Pattern 4

#### A. Substitution drill

When the steamer starts, we'll sit down.

jab (sTiimar calnee lageegaa), too baiTh jaaēēgee.  
darwaazaa khuleegaa  
ghar-kee bhiitar pahūcēēgee  
baariś k̥hatam hoo jaaegii  
dhuup aaeegii  
baiThnee-kaa prabandh hoogaa  
kinaaree-see lauTēēgee  
jantaa aaeegii  
nahaanee-waalee yahāā-see calēēgee

#### B. Conversational response drill

### Instructor

The steamer has started to move, should we go in?

sTiimar calnee lagaa hai, kyaa ham andar calēē?  
TikaT ghar khulaa hai, kyaa ham TikaT lēē?  
hindii paRhnee-kaa prabandh kiya gayaa hai, kyaa ham hindii paRhēē?  
baariś śuruu hoo rahii hai, kyaa ham bhiitar baiThēē?  
bahut garmii lag rahii hai, kyaa ham lassii piyēē?  
bahut ThanD lag rahii hai, kyaa ham kooT pahanēē?  
dhoobii kapRee laa rahaa hai, kyaa ham paisaa dee dēē?  
bahut garmii lag rahii hai, kyaa ham nahaanee jaaēē?  
aaj dhuup kaafii teez hai, kyaa ham śarbat piyēē?  
jaaRaa aa rahaa hai, kyaa ham sair karēē?  
ciinii nahīī hai, kyaa ham kaafii binaa ciinii-kii piyēē?

### Class

When the steamer starts to move, one must go in.

jab sTiimar calnee lagtaa hai, too andar calnaa hii paRtaa hai.  
jab TikaT ghar khultaa hai, too TikaT leenaa hii paRtaa hai.  
jab hiddii paRhnee-kaa prabandh kiya gayaa hai, too hindii paRhni hii paReegii.  
etc.

Pattern 5      Contrary to fact clauses.

The use of the taa participle without hai in clauses like those illustrated below, indicates that the statement is contrary to fact:

agar paanii baras jaataa, too ųaayad mausam ThanDaa hoo jaataa.  
If it had rained, then it probably would have cooled off.

agar gaaRii aatii, too mǎĩ deer-see na aataa.  
If the train had come, I would not have been late.

The use of the -ee or -eegaa forms in such clauses indicates that the statement may come true.

agar paanii baras jaaeegaa, too ųaayad mausam ThanDaa hoo jaaeegaa.  
If it should rain, then maybe it will cool off.

agar paanii baras jaaee, too ųaayad mausam ThanDaa hoo jaaee.  
If by some chance it should rain, then maybe it might cool off.

A. Substitution-agreement drill

If ghats like those in Banaras had been built here, then many people would have come here.

agar (banaaras jaisee ghaaT) yahǎǎ ban jaatee, too kaafii jantaa aatii.  
acchaa pul  
acchi saRkǎǎ  
nace tariĩkee-kii dukaanǎǎ  
kaafii haaus  
sinemaa ghar  
acchaa aDDaa

B. Substitution-agreement drill

If they'd build ghats here like those in Banaras, then many people would come.

agar (banaaras jaisee ghaaT) yahǎǎ ban jaaǎǎ, too kaafii jantaa aacee.

Continue with the items of drill A.

C. Substitution drill

If they had done any work at all, there would not have been trouble.

agar wee (kaam kartee), too takliif na hootii.  
acchaa intizaam kartee  
jaldi ųuruu kartee  
loogǎǎ-see mulaakaat kartee  
foon kartee  
saamaan mǎgaatee  
dikhaai deetee  
rooz nahaatee  
baiThnee-kaa prabandh kartee

## D. Conversational response drill

Instructor

The new ghat was not built, and many people did not come.

nayaa ghaaT nahīī banaayaa gayaa, aur bahut loog nahīī aae.  
 acchaa intizaam nahīī kiyaa gayaa, aur kheel pasand nahīī aayaa.  
 gaaRii nahīī aai, aur un-koo deer hui.  
 aasmaan bilkul saaf rahaa, aur barsaat nahīī aai.  
 dhuup kaafii teez thii, aur un-koo bhiitar jaanaa paRaa.  
 sTiimar chuuTnee-mēē bahut deer hui, aur māī nahīī gayaa.  
 wah hindustaan-mēē nahīī rahaa, aur hindii nahīī siikhii.  
 piinee-kee liyee kuch nahīī milaa, aur ham-koo pyaas lagii.  
 us-nee naagrii nahīī paRhii, aur niśaan na paRh sakaa.  
 puraanii gaaRii teez nahīī calii, aur un-koo bahut samay lagaa.  
 soolah-koo un-koo fursat na thii, aur wee nahīī gae.  
 un-koo bhuukh lagii, aur unhōō-nee samoosee khaae.

Class

If the new ghat had been built, many people would have come.

agar nayaa ghaaT banaayaa jaataa, too bahut loog aatee.  
 agar acchaa intizaam kiyaa jaataa, too kheel pasand aataa.  
 agar gaaRii aatii, too un-koo deer na hootii.  
 agar aasmaan saaf rahtaa, too baariś na aatii.  
 etc.

## E. Repeat drill D, changing the contrary to fact clauses in the response into clauses indicating possibility.

Instructor: The new ghat was not built, and many people did not come.  
 Class: If the new ghat were to be built many people would come.

Instructor: nayaa ghaaT nahīī banaayaa gayaa, aur bahut loog nahīī aae.  
 Class: agar nayaa ghaaT banaayaa jae, too bahut loog aaēē.

etc.

Pattern 6 The past of caahiye.

caahiye is followed by thaa, thee, thii, thīī in past tense statements:

aap-koo apnaa safar jaaRee-mēē śuruv karnaa caahiye thaa.  
 You should have started your trip in the winter.

## A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Today we ought to do a lot of work.

aa bahut kaam karnaa caahiye.  
 aa khuub hindii paRhni caahiye.  
 aa barsaat śuruv hoo jaani caahiye.  
 aa kapRee dhulaanee caahiye.  
 aa too baadal nazar aa jaane caahiye.  
 aa ghaaT-par nahaana caahiye.  
 aa banaaras-kii galiyāā deekhnii caahiye.  
 aa naagrii paRhnee-kaa prabandh karnaa caahiye.  
 aa ghar hii-mēē rahnaa caahiye.  
 aa too sTiimar-koo chuuTnaa caahiye.  
 aa sabzii binaa mirc-kii banaani caahiye.



### Class

Yesterday we also should have done a lot of work.

kal bhii bahut kaam karnaa caahiye thaa.  
kal bhii k̥huub hindii paRhni caahiye thii.  
kal bhii barsaat ŷuruu hoo jaanii caahiye thii.  
kal bhii kapRee dhulaanee caahiye thee.  
etc.

### B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: I am late.

1st Student: But you should have hurried.

Instructor: mujhee deer huii.

1st Student: magar aap-koo too jaldii karnii caahiye thii.

Instructor: māī-nee darwaazaa band kiya.

2nd Student: magar aap-koo darwaazaa too khoolnaa caahiye thaa.

### Instructor

maaf kiijiye, māī-nee kam paisaa diya.  
māī andar aaya.  
māī-nee garam ŷarbat māgaaya.  
māī udhar baiThaa.  
māī-nee ciThii urduu-mēē likhi.  
māī ghar-mēē rahaa.  
māī khaRaa rahaa.  
māī-nee klaas ŷuruu kii.  
māī-nee caay pii.

Any answer which contradicts the instructor's statement is acceptable.

### Pattern 7

### A. Transformation drill

### Instructor

He started learning Hindi last week.

us-nee pichlee haftee hindii paRhni ŷuruu kii.  
dhoobii-nee pichlee haftee saamaan laanaa ŷuruu kiya.  
laRkiyōō-nee pichlee haftee sair karnii ŷuruu kii.  
un-kee doost-nee pichlee haftee foon karnaa ŷuruu kiya.  
wideēī-nee pichlee haftee ghar lauTnaa ŷuruu kiya.  
un loogōō-nee pichlee haftee nadii-mēē nahaanaa ŷuruu kiya.  
jantaa-nee pichlee haftee nadii-kee paas ghumnnaa ŷuruu kiya.  
saaree widyaarthiyōō-nee pichlee haftee hindii boolni ŷuruu kii.

Class

He began learning Hindi last week.

wah pichlee haftee hindii paRhnee lagaa.  
 dhoobii pichlee haftee saamaan laanee lagaa.  
 laRkiyāā pichlee haftee sair karnee lagīī.  
 un-kee doost pichlee haftee foon karnee lagee.  
 etc.

## Pattern 8

## A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

The rainy season should have started by now.

ab-tak too barsaat šurū hoo jaanii caahiye thii.  
 ab-tak too aasmaan saaf hoo jaanaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too mausam kuch ThanDaa hoo jaanaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too garmii khatam hoo jaanii caahiye thii.  
 ab-tak too hawaa kuch ThanDii hoo jaanii caahiye thii.  
 ab-tak too jaaRee-kaa mausam aa jaanaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too gaarii aanii caahiye thii.  
 ab-tak too yaatrii-koo pahūcnaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too hindii paRhnee paRhaanee-kaa prabandh karnaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too bairee-koo caay laanii caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too sTiimar-koo chuuTnaa caahiye thaa.  
 ab-tak too aap-koo apnaa safar šurū karnaa caahiye thaa.

Class

It should have started, but it certainly hasn't.

hoo too jaanii caahiye, magar šurū kahāā huii.  
 hoo too jaanaa caahiye, magar saaf kahāā huāa.  
 hoo too jaanaa caahiye, magar ThanDaa kahāā huāa.  
 hoo too jaanii caahiye, magar khatam kahāā huii.  
 hoo too jaanii caahiye, magar ThanDii kahāā huii.  
 aa too jaanaa caahiye, magar aayaa kahāā hai.  
 aanii too caahiye, magar aaii kahāā hai.  
 pahūcnaa too caahiye, magar pahūcaa kahāā hai.  
 karnaa too caahiye, magar kiya kahāā hai.  
 laanii too caahiye, magar laayii kahāā hai.  
 chuuTnaa too caahiye, magar chuuTaa kahāā hai.  
 karnaa too caahiye, magar šurū kahāā kiya.

## B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: The rainy season didn't come at all.

1st Student: It should have come by now.

2nd Student: Yes, but it certainly didn't come.

Instructor: barsaat too bīlkul nahīī aaii.

1st Student: aanii too caahiye thii, ab-tak.

2nd Student: hāā, magar aaii kahāā hai.

Instructor: aasmann too bilkul saaf nahĩĩ huaa.  
2nd Student: hoonaa too caahiye thaa, ab-tak.  
3rd Student: hãã, magar huaa kahãã hai.

Instructor

mausam too ThanDaa bilkul nahĩĩ huaa.  
garmii too khatam bilkul nahĩĩ huii.

Continue with the material from drill A.

Pattern 9

A. Chain drill

Instructor: Mr. \_\_\_\_\_, in what month were you born?  
1st Student: I was born in the month of \_\_\_\_\_.  
2nd Student: On what date?  
1st Student: On the \_\_\_\_\_.

Instructor: smith saahaab, aap kis mahiinee-mèè paidaa huee.  
1st Student: mãĩ julaaii-kee mahiinee-mèè paidaa huaa.  
2nd Student: kis taariikh-koo paidaa huee.  
1st Student: baarah taariikh-koo.

Continue several times around the class.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

sTiimar-kii yaatraa kaun loog kartee hāĩ.  
sTiimar chuuTnee-mēē kitnii deer hai.  
sTiimar chuuTnee-kee pahlee, wideešii kahāā khaRee thee.  
haahar garmii adhik hai, yaa kam.  
wee loog kab bhiitar jaatee hāĩ.  
kyaa baariš hoonee-waalii hai?  
kyaa aasmaan-mēē baadal hāĩ?  
kyaa kal aaj-see zyaadaa garmii thii?  
kyaa dhuup kam hoo rahii hai?  
kaun-saa mahiinaa hai?  
barsaat-koo kis mahiinee-mēē šuruu hoo jaanaa caahiyee.  
paanii barasnee-kee baad mausam kaisaa hootaa hai.  
wideešii-nee apnii yaatraa jaaRee-mēē kyōō nahĩĩ šuruu kii.  
nahaanee-waalōō-kii bhiir kahāā dikhaaii deetii hai.  
wideešii-nee banaaras-mēē kyaa deekhaa.

### Group 2

kyaa wideešii bas-see safar kar rahee hāĩ?  
paTnaa-kee paas kaun-sii nadii hai.  
kyaa sTiimar chuuTnee-mēē eek din aur hai?  
loog baahar kyaa kar rahee hāĩ.  
kyaa baariš-kee kooii aasaar nazar aa rahee hāĩ?  
kyaa barsaat šuruu huii hai?  
agar barsaat šuruu hootii, too kyaa hootaa?  
kyaa wideešii-koo jaaRee-mēē kooii kaam nahĩĩ hai?  
kyaa paTnaa-kee ghaaT-par kaašii-see zyaadaa bhiir hai?  
agar banaaras jaisee ghaaT ban jaatee, too kyaa hootaa?  
sTiimar chuuTnee-par loog kahāā baiTh jaatee hāĩ.  
kyaa wideešii saaf urduu booltee hāĩ?  
us-nee hindii kahāā siikhii?  
yaatrii kyōō khuš hootee hāĩ?  
kyaa amriikaa-mēē hindii-kee kam widyaarthii hāĩ?

## Situational Response

### widee᳚ii-kee saathii:

kyaa aap-koo garmii lagtii hai?  
ham andar baiThēē, yaa baahar khaRee hoo jaaēē.  
kyaa is sTiimar-par aap-nee pahlee bhii safar kiyaa hai?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii itnii garmii lagtii hai?  
kyaa aasmaan-mēē baadal dikhaaii deetee hāī?  
kyaa aap pahlii baar gangaa deekh rahee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii gangaa jaisii nadiyāā hāī?  
kyaa aap-koo garmii-mēē safar karnaa pasand hai?  
andar kyōō nahīī baiThee.  
kyaa aap-nee TikaT bhii liyaa?  
aap-nee banaaras-kee ghaaT too deekhee hōōgee.

### yaatrii:

aap kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee hāī.  
aap-nee itnii acchii hindii kahāā siikhii.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii aisee sTiimar hāī?  
kyaa amriikaa-mēē bahut widyaarthii hindii paRh rahee hāī?  
aap-kee khayaal-mēē, kaun-sii bhaa᳚aa acchii hai, hindii yaa angreezii.  
kyaa aap hindii paRh bhii saktee hāī?  
aap paTnaa-mēē kahāā rahtee hāī.  
aap-nee jaaRee-mēē safar kyōō nahīī kiyaa.  
aap-koo gangaa kaisii lagtii hai.  
aap hindustaan-mēē kahāā rahtee hāī.

### widee᳚ii:

kahiyee saahab, sTiimar kis samay chuuTtaa hai.  
aaj too bahut garmii lag rahii hai. yah kyōō.  
kyaa aap hamaaree saath baahar rahēēgee?  
jab sTiimar calnee lagee, too kahāā baiThēēgee.  
kyaa yahāā hamee᳚aa aisi garmii lagtii hai?  
safar-kee liyee sab-see acchaa samay kaun-saa hai.  
wahāā kinaaree-par joo loog hāī, wee kyaa kar rahee hāī.  
yahāā banaaras jaisii bhiiR too nahīī hai. yah kyōō.  
kyaa sTiimar chuuTnee-mēē bahut deer lageegii?  
barsaat kab ᳚uruu hoo jaanii caahiyee.  
aap-koo dhuup-mēē kooii takliif too nahīī hoogii.

## Review Conversations

### sTeeŶan-par

1. A: abhii gaaRii chuuTnee-měě deer hai, kyaa?  
B: hãã, kooii pandrah minat lagěěgee.  
A: tab too thoorii deer tak pleetfaarm-par ghuumnee jaa saktee hãĩ.  
B: hãã. deekhiyee, abhii too banaaras-waalii gaaRii bhii nahĩĩ gaii.  
A: tab too is-kaa matlab hai, ki abhii kaafii samay hai.  
B: hãã. aaiyee, tab tak kuch khaa bhii liyaa jaaee.  
A: jaisii aap-kii icchaa.
2. A: baRii garam hawaa aa rahii hai.  
B: agar aap kahěě, too khiRkii band kar dũũ.  
A: baRii meharbaanii aap-kii.  
B: kahiye, aap kahãã jaa rahee hãĩ.  
A: mãĩ zaraa banaaras jaa rahaa hũũ.  
B: banaaras-měě too aur bhii garmii hoogii.
3. A: yahãã kyõõ khaRee hãĩ, smith saahab?  
B: kyaa karěě, bhiitar bahut garmii hai.  
A: hãã, aaj too hawaa bhii nahĩĩ cal rahii hai.  
B: kal too is-see kuch ThanDaa thaa.  
A: hãã, leekin ab too har rooz garmii zyaadaa hii hootii jaaeegii.  
B: abhii baariŶ Ŷuruu hoonee-měě kitnee din baaki hãĩ.  
A: abhii lagbhag das pandrah din-měě paanii barascegaa.

### idhar udhar-kii baat-ciit

4. A: aap kahãã-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ.  
B: amriikaa-see hũũ, kyõõ.  
A: aap-kii hindii sun-kar baRaa acraj hootaa hai. kahãã siikhii yah hindii?  
B: amriikaa-měě hii siikhii thii.  
A: is-kaa matlab amriikaa-měě hindii paRhaanee-kaa acchaa prabandh hai.  
B: jii hãã, wahãã bahut loogõõ-nee hindii paRhni Ŷuruu kii hai.

5. A: kyaa aap-kee dees-mēē urduu paRhnee-kaa intizaam hai?  
 B: jii hāā, ab too bahut loogōō-nee urduu paRhniī ŷurūū kīī hai.  
 A: ham-nee sunaa, ki urduu zabaan bahut muškil hai.  
 B: nahīī, itnīī muškil nahīī, bahut samay lagtaa hai.  
 A: kyaa aap hindustaanīyōō-see baat bhīī kar saktee hāī?  
 B: koošīŷ too kar rahaa hūū, boolnaa paRhnee-see kuch muškil hai.

mausam-kee baaree-mee

6. A: ab kaun-saa mahīīnaa hai, ŷarmaa jīī.  
 B: julaaiī-kaa mahīīnaa hai. kyōō, kooīī khaas baat hai kyaa?  
 A: nahīī, yūū hīī puuch rahaa thaa, baRīī garmīī hai.  
 B: kyaa kiyaa jaa saktaa hai, ab tak too paanīī baras jaanaa caahiye thaa.  
 A: leekin abhīī too paanīī barasnee-kee kooīī aasaar nazar nahīī aatee.  
 B: hāā, maaluum hootaa hai, ki yee mausam abhīī kuch din aur caleegaa.
7. A: deekhiyee, wee loog kaisee nahaa rahee hāī.  
 B: jīī hāā, garmīī-mēē too nahaanee-see bahut aaraam miltaa hai.  
 A: is saal garmīī kuch zyaadaa hai kyaa?  
 B: garmīī zyaadaa too nahīī hai, leekin abhīī tak baariŷ nahīī hūīī hai.  
 A: idhar too julaaiī-kee ŷurūū-mēē hīī paanīī baras jaataa hai.  
 B: baras too jaataa hai, leekin deekhiyee na, abhīī bhīī aasmaan kitnaa saaf hai.
8. A: ham-nee sunaa, ki aap-kee dees-mēē mausam bahut ThanDaa hai.  
 B: jaaRee-mēē baraf bahut girtīī hai.  
 A: too aap loogōō-koo jaaRee-mēē too bahut takliif hootīī hoogīī.  
 B: nahīī too, ham zyaadaa-tar makaan andar rahtee hāī aur kaam kartee hāī.  
 bhiitar too garam rahtaa hai.  
 A: aap loogōō-koo garmīī-mēē chuTTīī hoogīī.  
 B: hāā, garmīī-kee samay sair kartee hāī. tab too hamaaree yahāā dhuup bahut acchīī lagtīī hai.

Unit VII Part B

Conversation

- 1 musaafirōō-see baat-ciit.  
2 paTnaa, sTiimar-par safar.
- 
- 3 wideešii: kyaa aap loog gangaa paar-kee rahnee-waalee hāī?  
4 saathii: soonpur hii-mēē rahtee hāī saahab. kyaa aap bhii wahāā cal  
rahee hāī?  
5 wideešii: māī aur meeree saathii muzaffarpur jaa rahee hāī.  
6 kyaa aap loog paTnaa aksar aayaa kartee hāī?  
7 musaafir: jii hāā, ham too haftee-mēē kaii dafaa aatee jaatee hii  
rahtee hāī.
- 
- 8 kabhii maal laanaa hai, kabhii sarkaarii daftarōō-mēē kaam hai.  
wahii hamaaraa byoopar hai.  
9 wideešii: aanee jaanee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii. kaafii  
lambaa safar hai na?  
10 musaafir: kooii Dhaaii ghanTee lagtee hāī. soonpur-see ghaaT-tak reel  
hai, aur phir sTiimar.  
11 yee joo loog yahāā baiThee hāī, wee sab rooz aatee-jaatee hāī.
- 
- 12 wideešii: sarkaar eek pul banaa dee, too aap sab aaraam-see gangaa paar  
kar sakēē.  
13 musaafir: baat yah hai, ki nadii-kaa paat bahut cauRaa hai, aur phir har  
saal baaRh bhii too aa jaatii hai.  
14 wideešii: baaRh-kii wajah-see too pul-kaa bannaa aur bhii zaruurii hai.  
15 musaafir: iraadaa too kar rahii hai banaanee-kaa. kaii karoor lagēēgee.  
šaayad aglii pāāc waršiiy yoojnaa-mēē bance.
-



16 wideešii: ab too bahut tarakkii hoo rahii hai aap-kee dees-mēē.  
17 saathii: deekhiyee, pahlee loog us tarah-kii naawōō-mēē aayaa jaayaa  
kartee thee.  
18 un-mēē too aur bhii adhik samay lagtaa thaa.  
19 suniyee, pahleejaa ghaat aanee-waalaa hai.  
20 wideešii: acchaa, namastee. aap loogōō-see mil-kar bahut khušii huii.  
21 saathii: namastee.

---

22 wideešii: wee kaalii wardii-mēē kaun loog hāī.  
23 saathii: wee kulii hāī. gaaRii-tak loogōō-kee saamaan pahūcaatee hāī.  
24 wideešii: ab too kaafii ādheeraa hoo gayaa hai. aap thak gae kyaa?  
25 saathii: hāā, nīīd aa rahii hai. gaaRii-mēē thooRaa-saa sooēēgee.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

W: wideesii  
S: saathii  
M: musaafir

	musaafir	traveller (m)
1	<u>musaafirõõ-see baat-ciit.</u>	<u>Talking with travellers.</u>
2	<u>paTnaa, sTiimar-par safar.</u>	<u>Patna, ride on a steamer.</u>
	paar	across (m)
3 W:	<u>kyaa aap loog gangaa paar-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?</u>	<u>Do you live on the other side of the Ganges?</u>
	soonpur	Sonpur (town) (m)
4 S:	<u>soonpur hii-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ saahab. kyaa aap bhii wahãã cal rahee hãĩ?</u>	<u>We live right in Sonpur, sir. Are you going there, too?</u>
	saathii	companion (m)
	muzaffarpur	Muzaffarpur (city) (m)
5 W:	<u>mãĩ aur meeree saathii muzaffarpur jaa rahee hãĩ.</u>	<u>My friend and I are going to Muzaffarpur.</u>
	aksar	often (adv)
	aayaa karnaa	to come regularly, be in the habit of coming
6 W:	<u>kyaa aap loog paTnaa aksar aayaa kartee hãĩ?</u>	<u>Do you often come to Patna?</u>
	dafaa	time (f)
	kaii dafaa	several times
	aanaa jaanaa	to commute
	aatee jaatee rahnaa	to keep coming and going
7 M:	<u>jii hãã, ham too haftee-mẽẽ kaii dafaa aatee jaatee hii rahtee hãĩ.</u>	<u>Yes, we commute several times a week.</u>
	kabhii	sometimes
	maal	goods (m)
	daftar	office (m)
	byoopaar	business (m)
8 M:	<u>kabhii maal laanaa hai, kabhii sarkaarii daftarõõ-mẽẽ kaam hai. wahii hamaaraa byoopaar hai.</u>	<u>Sometimes we have to bring goods, sometimes we have work in government offices. That's the way our business is.</u>

- lambaa
- 9 W: aanee jaanee-mēē too bahut  
takliif hootii hoogii.  
kaafii lambaa safar hai na?
- kooii Dhaaii ghanTee  
reel
- 10 M: kooii Dhaaii ghanTee lagtee  
hāī. soonpur-see ghaaT-tak  
reel hai, aur phir sTiimar.
- 11 M: yee joo loog yahāā baiThee  
hāī, wee sab rooz aatee  
jaatee hāī.
- paar karnaa
- 12 W: sarkaar eek pul banaa dee, too  
aap sab aaraam-see gangaa  
paar kar sakēē.
- paaT  
saal  
baaRh  
cauRaa
- 13 M: baat yah hai, ki nadii-kaa  
paaT bahut cauRaa hai, aur  
phir har saal baaRh bhii too  
aa jaatii hai.
- pul-kaa bannaa  
-kii wajah-see  
aur bhii
- 14 W: baaRh-kii wajah-see too pul-  
kaa bannaa aur bhii zaruurii  
hai.
- iraadaa  
iraadaa karnaa  
karoor  
warš  
waršiiy  
yoojnaa
- 15 M: iraadaa too kar rahii hai  
banaanee-kaa. kii karoor  
lagēēgee. šaayad aglii pāāc  
waršiiy yoojnaa-mēē banee.
- tarakkii
- 16 W: ab too bahut tarakkii hoo  
rahii hai aap-kee deē-mēē.

- long
- It must be a lot of trouble to  
commute every day. It's quite  
a long trip, isn't it?
- about 2 1/2 hours  
train (f)
- It takes about 2 1/2 hours. From  
Sonpur to the ghat; there's a  
train and then the steamer.
- All the people sitting here  
commute every day.
- to cross (a river)
- If the government would build a  
bridge here, you'd all be able  
to cross the Ganges more easily.
- width (of a river ) (m)  
year (m)  
flood (f)  
broad
- The thing is, the river is too  
wide, and then there is also  
a flood every year.
- the building of the bridge  
because of  
even more
- On account of the flood it's  
even more necessary to have  
a bridge built.
- intention  
to intend  
ten million (m)  
year (m)  
yearly  
plan (f)
- They do intend to build one.  
It will cost several crores.  
Maybe it'll be in the next  
Five year Plan.
- progress
- You're certainly making a lot  
of progress in your country  
these days.

naaw	boat (f)
aayaa jaayaa karnaa	to be in the habit of commuting
17 S: <u>deekhiyee, pahlee loog us tarah-kii naawõõ-mẽẽ aayaa jaayaa kartee thee.</u>	<u>Look, formerly people used to commute in boats like that.</u>
18 S: <u>un-mẽẽ too aur bhii adhik samay lagtaa thaa.</u>	<u>In those it used to take even longer.</u>
pahleejaa	Pahleja (place name)
aanee-waalaa hai	is about to come
19 S: <u>suniyee, pahleejaa ghaat aanee-waalaa hai.</u>	<u>Look, we're getting close to Pahleja Ghat.</u>
mil-kar	havin, met
20 W: <u>acchaa, namastee. aap loogõõ-see mil-kar bahut khuṣii huii.</u>	<u>I'm glad to have met you all. Namaste.</u>
21 S: <u>namastee.</u>	<u>Namaste.</u>
wardii	uniform
22 W: <u>wee kaalii wardii-mẽẽ kaun loog hãĩ.</u>	<u>Who are those people in black uniforms?</u>
pahũcaanaa	to transport
23 S: <u>wee kulii hãĩ. gaaRii-tak loogõõ-kee saamaan pahũcaatee hãĩ.</u>	<u>They're porters. They carry people's baggage to the train.</u>
thakaa	tired (adj)
thak jaanaa	to become tired
ãdheeraa	darkness, dark (adj)
24 W: <u>ab too kaafii ãdheeraa hoo gayaa hai. aap thak gae kysa?</u>	<u>It's getting quite dark now. Are you tired?</u>
nĩĩd	sleep (f)
soonaa	to sleep
25 S: <u>hãã, nĩĩd aa rahii hai. gaaRii-mẽẽ thooRaa-saa sooẽẽgee.</u>	<u>Yes, I feel sleepy. I'll get some sleep in the train.</u>

## Cultural Notes

The Ganges River, running southeast accross Bihar, splits the state into North and South Bihar. The river, which is several miles across at Patna, and the peculiarities of the terrain create considerable transportation and communication problems. The geological upthrust of the Himalayas, young mountains which have risen in recent geological times, is balanced to the south by a low-lying area -- the North Indian plain -- which was under water up to and during the earlier part of historical time. At the time of the first Aryan incursions into northwest India, the sea seems to have been retreating from the Patna area; by the time of the Mauryan Empire, large parts of this tract were still swampland. Today the shifting sandy soil and general subsoil wetness continue to make bridge and road building difficult, and at Patna the only mode of cross-Ganges transportation is by ferry, with a few bridges as much as twenty miles distant from the city.

A variety of ferry services is available at Patna. Railroad ferries carry freight; and passenger steamers, such as the one shown in this lesson, make the crossing in something over an hour. Freight and passengers are also transported in large sailboats and even in rowboats taking five or six hours to cross the river. These conditions make economic development difficult in Bihar and tend to cut off large tracts from sustained large-scale contacts with the outside.

Because of the shortage of local resources for economic development, most efforts in this field are made by the Central Government in the well-known Five Year Plans (pāñc warṣiiy yoojnāa), and local areas look to the Government for assistance. Improvements are visible in Bihar as elsewhere and the Five Year Plans are a favorite topic of general conversation, as in this lesson.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
yaatrii	musaafir	traveller (m)
baar	dafaa	time (f)
-kee kaaraN	-kii wajah-see	because of
aawašyak	zaruurii	necessary
aawašyaktaa	zaruurat	necessity (f)

### 2. Additional geographical terms

samudr	ocean (m)	bahnaa	to flow
pahaaR	mountains (m)	maidaan	plain (m)

### 3. Numbers 85 to 100

pacaasii	85	tiraanvee	93
chiyaasii	86	cauraanvee	94
sattaasii	87	pancaanvee	95
aTThaasii	88	cchiyaanvee	96
navaasii	89	sattaanvee	97
nabbee	90	aTThaanvee	98
ikyaanvee	91	ninyaanvee	99
baanvee	92	sau	100

### 4. Numbers above 100

eek sau eek	101
eek hazaar	1,000
eek laakh	100,000
eek karooR	10,000,000

## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

#### A. Substitution drill

Do you live on the other side of the river?

kyaa aap (nadii paar)-kee rahnee-waalee hāĩ?

samudra paar

gangaa paar

pahaaR

amriikaa

dillii

us taraf

#### B. Chain Drill

Instructor: Where did the 'moci' live?

1st Student: He lived in Nainital.

2nd Student: In which direction is Nainital from Delhi?

1st Student: Nainital is to the north of Delhi.

Instructor: moocii kahāā-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

1st Student: wah nainitaal-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

2nd Student: nainitaal dillii-see kis taraf hai.

1st Student: nainitaal dillii-kee uttar-mēē hai.

Instructor: paTnaa-kee sTiimar-kee yaatrii kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

1st Student: wee soonpur-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

2nd Student: soonpur paTnaa-see kis taraf hai.

1st Student: soonpur paTnaa-see nadii-kee us paar hai.

#### Instructor

jain saahab kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

panDit jii kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

tāāgee-waalaa kahāā-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

Taiksii Draaiwar kahāā-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

phal-waalaa kahāā-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

smith saahab kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

miir saahab kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee thee.

rikSee-waalaa kahāā-kaa rahnee-waalaa thaa.

The second student may use any Indian town in asking his question.

Pattern 2      aayaa karnaa

Constructions such as the above may be formed from most verbs. In these constructions karnaa is the auxiliary and is inflected for tense and mood. karnaa is preceded by a form of the main verb which looks like the -aa participle. In this construction, however, this form is invariant and does not take any other case and gender endings. jaanaa has the special form jaayaa in these constructions.

kyaa aap loog paTnaa aksar aayaa kartee hãĩ?  
Do you ordinarily come to Patna very often?

loog us tarah-kii naawõõ-mẽẽ aayaa jaayaa kartee thee.  
People used to come and go in that kind of boat.

wah bahut kaam kiyaa kartaa thaa.  
He used to do a lot of work.

The above constructions usually indicate habitual action. They may, however, be used in request forms to lend the request a special air of insistence.

paanii piyaa kiijiyee.  
Get in the habit of drinking water.

A. Transformation drill

Instructor

People ordinarily go to temple every day.  
loog rooz mandir jaayaa kartee hãĩ.  
deehaat-kee rahnee-waalee udhar nahaayaa kartee hãĩ.  
moocii saRak-kee kinaaree kaam kiyaa kartee hãĩ.  
kulii udhar saamaan rakhaa kartee hãĩ.  
widyaarthii kaafii haaus-mẽẽ kaafii piyaa kartee hãĩ.  
bairaa kamree-kee paas sooyaa kartaa hai.  
panDit mandir-mẽẽ phuul caRhaayaa kartee hãĩ.  
wideešii loog saaree dees-mẽẽ sair kiyaa kartee hãĩ.  
hindustaanii sabzii-mẽẽ bahut mirc Daalaa kartee hãĩ.  
laRkiyãã har waqt boolaa kartii hãĩ.

Class

People ordinarily went to temple every day.  
loog rooz mandir jaayaa kartee thee.  
deehaat-kee rahnee-waalee udhar nahaayaa kartee thee.  
moocii saRak-kee kinaaree kaam kiyaa kartaa thaa.  
etc.

B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What are they doing, sleeping?  
1st Student: They sleep every day.

Instructor: wee kyaa kar rahee hãĩ, soo rahee hãĩ?  
1st Student: wee too rooz sooyaa kartee hãĩ.

Instructor: wee kyaa kar rahee hãĩ, kaafii pii rahee hãĩ?  
2nd Student: wee too rooz kaafii piyaa kartee hãĩ.



### Instructor

wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, rooTii khua rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, zamiin-par baiTh rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, sair kar rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, nadii. paar kar rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, saamaan lee jaa rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, lassii banaa rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, makaan DūūDh rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, bas-see lauT rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, caay-mēē ciinii milaa rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, nadii-mēē nahaa rahee hāī?  
wee kyaa kar rahee hāī, pahaar-par caRh rahee hāī?

### Pattern 3      Oblique of -taa participle plus rahnaa.

The above construction may also be formed with most verbs. rahnaa functions as the auxiliary, while the -taa participle form of the main verb remains invariant.

ham rooz hii aatee jaatee rahtee hāī.	We keep commuting every day.
ham kaafii piitee rahee.	We kept drinking coffee.

The difference in meaning between these constructions and those of pattern two is the difference between repetitive and habitual action. In some contexts, however, the two constructions may be used interchangeably.

#### A. Transformation drill

##### Instructor

They keep commuting every day.

wee rooz aatee jaatee rahtee hāī.  
wee rooz nadii paar kartee rahtee hāī.  
wee udhar saamaan rakhtee rahtee hāī.  
wee sab loogōō-see miltee rahtee hāī.  
wee baat sunaatee rahtee hāī.  
wee juutee badaltee rahtee hāī.  
wee har waqt sootee rahtee hāī.  
widyaarthii booltee rahtee hāī.  
wee saamaan lee aatee rahtee hāī.  
wee caay piitee rahtee hāī.

##### Class

They kept commuting every day.

wee rooz aatee jaatee rahee.  
wee rooz nadii paar kartee rahee.  
wee udhar saaman rakhtee rahee.  
etc.

#### B. Conversational response drill

##### Instructor

Do those travellers often go to Patna?

kyaa wee yaatrii paTnaa aksar aayaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa widyaarthii hazrat ganj-mēē aksar ghuumaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa wideeśii aksar sair kiyaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa panDit loog aksar mandir-mēē phuul caRhaayaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa gaahak aksar baazaar-mēē saamaan khariidaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa dhoobii aksar kapRee dhcoyaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa wideeśii aksar hindustaniyōō-see baat kiyaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa gāāw-waalee aksar zamiin-par baiThaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa soonpur-kee rahnee-waalee aksar nadii paar kiyaa kartee hāī?  
kyaa nainiitaal-kee rahnee-waalee aksar pahaar-kee uupar caRhaa kartee hāī?

Class

They keep going to Patna all the time.

wee too hameeṣāa paṭnaa jaatee raṭtee hāī.

wee too hameeṣāa hazrat ganj-mēē ghuumtee raṭtee hāī.

wee too hameeṣāa sair kartee raṭtee hāī.

etc.

- C. Repeat drill B in the past using -aa participle constructions.

Pattern 4 The adverbial oblique of -taa participles.

kuch dillii-mēē raṭtee siikh līi.

I learned some while staying in Delhi.

Ṣaam hootē hootē kaafī loog aa jaatee hāī.

During the late afternoon many people come.

The oblique -taa participle used as an adverb has the basic meaning: 'while the action of the verb is going on'; its actual translation differs, depending upon the context. The participle is sometimes repeated for emphasis.

- A. Substitution drill

I learned good Hindi staying in Delhi.

(dillii-mēē raṭtee) acchī hindī siikh līi.

loogōō-see baat kartee

paṛṭtee paṛṭtee

hindustaan-mēē sair kartee

kaam kartee

likṭtee likṭtee

deḥḥaat jaatee

aatee jaatee

- B. Conversational response drill

Instructor

He stayed in Delhi and learned very good Hindi.

wah dillii-mēē rahaa aur us-nee bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

us-nee loogōō-see baat kī aur bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

us-nee bahut paṛḥaa aur bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

us-nee bahut kaam kiya aur bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

us-nee bas-see safar kiya aur bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

wah deḥḥaat gayaa aur us-nee bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

wah aksar kaafī haaus gayaa aur us-nee bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

wah baahar khaṛaa huua aur us-nee bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

wah deḥḥaat-mēē rukaa aur us-nee bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

us-nee hindustaanī doostōō-see mulaakaat kī aur bahut acchī hindī siikh līi.

Class

By staying in Delhi, one learns good Hindi.

dillii-mēē rahtee, acchii hindii siikhii jaatii hai.  
loogōō-see baat kartee, acchii hindii siikhii jaatii hai.  
paRhtee paRhtee, acchii hindii siikhii jaatii hai.  
etc.

Pattern 5

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

It must be a lot of trouble to commute every day.

rooz aanee jaanee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
bas-see lauTnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
angreezii boolnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
puraanee tariikēe-kii naawōō-mēē paar karnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii  
hoogii.  
kaalii wardii pahannee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
ādheeree-mēē safar karnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
naee pul banaanee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
nadii paar karnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.  
injan-koo Thiik karnee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.

Class

Yes, it's a lot of trouble to commute every day.  
hāā, rooz aanee jaanee-mēē bahut takliif hootii hai.  
hāā, bas-see lauTnee-mēē bahut takliif hootii hai.  
hāā, angreezii boolnee-mēē bahut takliif hootii hai.  
etc.

B. Conversational response drill

Repeat drill A with negative answers.

Instructor

It must be a lot of trouble to commute every day.  
rooz aanee jaanee-mēē too bahut takliif hootii hoogii.

Class

No, it's no trouble at all to commute every day.  
nahīī, rooz aanee jaanee-mēē kooi takliif nahīī hootii.

## C. Conversational response drill

Instructor

The sky must be very clear today.

aaj too aasmaan bahut saaf hootaa hoogaa.  
 paTnaa-see soonpur-tak too bahut kam samay lagtaa hoogaa.  
 wideeśii too acchii hindii booltee hōōgee.  
 soonpur-kee rahnee-waalee too paTnaa-see maal laatee hōōgee.  
 hindustaan-kee gaawōō-mēē too bahut tarakkii hootii hoogii.  
 sarkaar too pul banaanee-kaa iraadaa kartii hoogii.  
 wideeśii aur un-kee saathii too muzaffarpur jaatee hōōgee.  
 pul-kaa banaanaa bahut zaruurii hootaa hoogaa.  
 wideeśii-kee saathii Treen-mēē soo saktee hōōgee.  
 kulii loogōō-kee saamaan Treen-tak pahūcaatee hōōgee.

Class

The sky is really clear today.

aaj too aasmaan saaf hii hootaa hai.  
 paTnaa-see soonpur-tak bahut kam hii samay lagtaa hai.  
 wideeśii acchii hindii hii booltee hāī.  
 etc.

## D. Conversational response drill

Instructor

The sky must have been very clear.

aasmaan bahut saaf huua hoogaa.  
 paTnaa-see soonpur-tak bahut kam samay lagaa hoogaa.  
 wideeśii acchii hindii boolaa hoogaa.  
 soonpur-kee rahnee-waalee paTnaa-see maal laaee hōōgee.

Class

Yes, the sky has become very clear.

hāā, aasmaan bahut saaf huua hai.

Continue with the material from drill C.

## E. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: The travellers on the Patna steamer must commute every day.

1st Student: Yes, they do commute every day.

Instructor: paTnaa sTiimar-kee yaatrii rooz aayaa jaayaa kartee hōōgee.

1st Student: hāā, paTnaa sTiimar-kee yaatrii rooz aayaa jaayaa kartee hāī.

Instructor: pul-kaa bannaa too zaruurii nahīī hootaa hoogaa.

2nd Student: nahīī, pul-kaa bannaa too zaruurii hii hai.

Instructor: smith saahab Treen-see sahaaranpur gae hōōgee.

3rd Student: nahīī, smith saahab too bas-see sahaaranpur gae hāī.

Instructor

pichlii pāāc waaršiiy yoojnaa-mēē pul ban gayaa hoogaa.  
gaawōō-mēē too ab bahut tarakkii hootii hoogii.  
wideešii too hindii nahīī boltee hōōgee.  
jaaRee-mēē wideešii-koo kooii kaam nahīī rahaa hoogaa.  
wideešii-nee jaipur-mēē rahtee hindii siikhii hoogii.  
aDDee-par kooii khaanaa nahīī miltaa hoogaa.  
lassii-mēē namak aur mirc milaatee hōōgee.  
loog masjid-mēē phuul caRhaatee hōōgee.  
akbar-nee apni raaniyōō-kee liyee mahal banwaaee hōōgee.

Answer yes or no in accordance with the facts of the conversations.

Pattern 6

A. Substitution drill

The government intends to build a bridge.

sarkaar (pul banaanee)-kaa iraadaa kar rahii hai.  
saRkēē banaanee  
dukaan lagaanee  
tarakkii karnee  
makaan banaanee  
paRhaaii-kaa prabandh karnee  
daftar khoolnee

B. Substitution drill

sarkaar-kaa (pul banaanee)-kaa iraadaa hai.  
saRkēē banaanee  
dukaan lagaanee  
tarakkii karnee

Continue with the materials of drill A.

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Shall we go to Sonpur?

1st Student: Fine. I also intended to go to Sonpur.

Instructor: kyaa soonpur jaaiyeegaa?

1st Student: acchii baat hai. māī bhii soonpur jaanee-kaa iraadaa kar  
rahaa thaa.

Instructor: kyaa aDDee-par kuch khaaiyeegaa?

2nd Student: acchii baat hai. māī bhii aDDee-par kuch khaanee-kaa iraadaa  
kar rahaa thaa.

Instructor

kyaa singh saahab-see mulaakaat kiijiyeegaa?  
 kyaa kaašii-mēē rukiyeegaa?  
 kyaa gaaRii-mēē kuch aaraam kiijiyeegaa?  
 kyaa daftar-mēē Thairiyeegaa?  
 kyaa deehaat deekhiyeegaa?  
 kyaa kaafii haaus caliyeegaa?  
 kyaa kuch hindii paRhiyeegaa?

## D. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Shall we go to Sonpur?

1st Student: Fine. It was also my intention to go to Sonpur.

Instructor: kyaa soonpur jaaiyeegaa?

1st Student: acchii baat hai. meeraa bhii soonpur jaanee-kaa iraadaa thaa.

Continue with the material of drill C.

## Pattern 7

## A. Substitution drill

It is necessary to build the bridge.

(pul)-kaa bannaa bahut zaruurii hai.

makaan

khaanee

saRkōō

kapRōō

## B. Transformation drill

Instructor

It is necessary to build the bridge.

pul-kaa bannaa bahut zaruurii hai.

makaan-kaa bannaa bahut zaruurii hai.

rooTii khaanaa bahut zaruurii hai.

byoopaar karnaa bahut zaruurii hai.

rooz aaya. jaayaa karnaa bahut

zaruurii hai.

daftar-mēē kaam karnaa bahut zaruurii hai.

hindii paRhaanee-kaa intizaam karnaa bahut

zaruurii hai.

nadii paar karnaa bahut zaruurii hai.

rooz nahaanaa bahut zaruurii hai.

Class

We need to build the bridge.

hamēē pul banaanee-kii zaruurat hai.

hamēē makaan banaanee-kii zaruurat hai.

hamēē rooTii khaanee-kii zaruurat hai.

etc.

## Pattern 8

sarkaar eek pul banaa`dee, too aap sab aaraam-see paar kar sakẽẽ.  
If the government would build a bridge here, then you would all be  
able to cross more easily.

The above constructions are identical in meaning to the agar constructions discussed in pattern 4, unit VIIA. In these constructions the agar may or may not be used. The use of the verbal form dee and sakee rather than the -taa participle conveys the connotation of possibility. Use of the -taa participle on the other hand indicates a contrary to fact condition:

sarkaar eek pul banaa deetii, too aap sab aaraam-see paar kar saktee.  
If the government had built a bridge, you all would have been able  
to cross more easily.

### A. Substitution drill

If the government were to build a bridge, it would be easier for everyone.

sarkaar (eek pul banaa dee), too sab-koo aaraam hoo jaaee.  
eek daftar khoolee  
saRkõõ-koo Thiik karee  
kinaaree-par ghaaT banaaee  
dukaanẽẽ lagaa dee  
nail gaaRiyãã khariidee  
yee maal beecae

### B. Substitution drill

Repeat drill A, starting the first clause with agar.

agar sarkaar eek pul banaa dee, too sab-koo aaraam hoo jaaee.

### C. Substitution drill

If the sky had been clear, we would have taken a trip.

(aasmaan saaf hootaa), too ham sair kartee.  
baariš na aatii  
fursat hootii  
paisaa hootaa  
singh saahab saath jaatee  
saRkẽẽ acchii hootiĩ  
bas miltii

### D. Substitution drill

Repeat drill C starting the first clause with agar.

## E. Transformation drill

Instructor

If the sky had been clear, we would have taken a trip.

aasmaan saaf hootaa, too ham sair kartee.

baariś na aatii, too ham sair kartee.

fursat hootii, too ham sair kartee.

paisaa hootaa, too ham sair kartee.

singh saahab saath jaatee, too ham sair kartee.

Class

If the sky were clear, we would take a trip.

aasmaan saaf hoo, too ham sair karēē.

baariś na aae, too ham sair karēē.

etc.

Continue with the items in drill C.

## F. Transformation drill

Repeat drill F using agar.

## G. Chain drill

Instructor: We wanted to go outside, but now the weather is bad.

1st Student: If the weather hadn't been bad, we would have gone out.

2nd Student: Maybe the weather will be all right tomorrow, then we'll go out.

Instructor: hamaaraa baahar jaanee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too mausam  
kharaab hai.

1st Student: mausam kharaab na hootaa, too ham baahar jaatee.

2nd Student: Saayad kal mausam Thiik hoo jaaegai, too phir baahar jaaēēgee.

Instructor: hamaaraa safar karnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar mootar-mēē kuch  
kharaabii hai.

2nd Student: agar mootar-mēē kharaabii na hootii, too ham safar kartee.

3rd Student: Saayad kal mootar Thiik hoo jaaegai, too phir ham safar  
karēēgee.

Instructor

hamaaraa kilaa deekhnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab kilaa too band hai.

hamaaraa hindii parhnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar aaj too klaas nahī hai.

hamaaraa doostō-see milnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar doost ealee gae.

hamaaraa nadii paar karnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab pul-kii marammat hoo  
rahi hai.

hamaaraa kaafii haas jaanee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too paisaa nahī hai.

hamaaraa sinema deekhnee kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too bahut deer hoo gai hai.

hamaaraa kuch pustakēē khariidnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too nahī bikti.

hamaaraa cappal māgaanee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too nahī milti.

hamaaraa baahar baiThnee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too baariś hoo rahi hai.

hamaaraa Treen-mēē soonee-kaa iraadaa thaa, magar ab too bahut bhiR hai.



Pattern 9

A. Transformation drill

Instructor

Because of the flood, it is even more necessary to build the bridge.

baaRh-kii wajah-see, pul banaanaa aur bhii zaruurii hai.

bhiiR-kii wajah-see, jaldii pahūcnaa zaruurii hai.

sākrii galiyōō-kii wajah-see, dhiiree calnaa zaruurii hai.

mausam-kii wajah-see, jaldii lauṭnaa zaruurii hai.

injan-kii kharaabii-kii wajah-see, eek din ruknaa zaruurii hai.

nadii-kii wajah-see, sTiimar-see jaanaa zaruurii hai.

paisee-kii wajah-see, paidal jaanaa zaruurii hai.

dhuup-kii wajah-see, baahar khaṛaa rahnaa zaruurii hai.

safar-kii wajah-see, jaldii uṭhnaa zaruurii hai.

jaaRee-kii wajah-see, garam kapRee pahanna zaruurii hai.

Class

Because of the flood, there is a need of building a bridge.

baaRh-kii wajah-see, pul banaanee-kii zaruurat hai.

bhiiR-kii wajah-see, jaldii pahūcnee-kii zaruurat hai.

sākrii galiyōō-kii wajah-see, dhiiree calnee-kii zaruurat hai.

- B. Repeat drill A using aawaśyak and aawaśyaktaa in place of zaruurii and zaruurat.

Pattern 10

A. Chain drill

Instructor: Mr. \_\_\_\_\_, did you meet Mr. \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?

Mr. \_\_\_\_\_: I was very glad to meet Mr. \_\_\_\_\_.

Instructor: smith saahab, kyaa aap kal roo saahab-see milee?

1st Student: jii hāā, roo saahab-see mil-kar bahut kḥuśii huii.

Continue several times around the class.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

wideešii kis-kee saath safar kar rahee hāĩ.  
musaafir kahāā-kee rahnee waalee hāĩ.  
wideešii kahāā cal rahee hāĩ.  
kyaa soonpur-see paTnaa aanee-mēē musaafirōō-koo takliif hootii hai?  
paTnaa pahūcnee-mēē kitnaa samay lagtaa hai.  
kyaa nadii-par pul ban jaanee-see loogōō-koo aaraam hoo jaaegaa?  
kyaa nadii-kaa paaT bahut sākraa hai?  
nadii-pār pul-kaa bannaa kyōō zaruurii hai.  
kyaa naaw-see aanee jaanee-mēē kam samay lagtaa thaa?  
sarkaar pul banaanee-kaa iraadaa kab kar rahii hai.  
kis deēš-mēē bahut tarakḳii hoo rahii hai?  
kaalii wardii-mēē kaun loog hāĩ.  
gaaRii-tak loogōō-kaa saamaan kaun lee jaatee hāĩ.  
wideešii-kee saathii kahāā soo sakēēgee.

### Group 2

kyaa wideešii rooz paTnaa aatee jaatee rahtee hāĩ?  
kyaa wideešii soonpur-kee rahnee-waalee hāĩ?  
musaafir kahāā aayaa jaayaa kartee hāĩ.  
musaafir kyaa kaam kartee hāĩ.  
soonpur-see ghaaT-tak loog kaisee aatee hāĩ.  
paTnaa pahūcnee-tak kitnaa samay lagtaa hai.  
sarkaar-nee pul kyōō nahīī banaayaa.  
agar nadii-par pul bantaa, too kyaa hootaa.  
nadii-kaa paaT kaisaa hai.  
kyaa nadii-mēē har saal baaRh aatii hai?  
pul banaanee-mēē kitnaa paisaa lageegaa.  
sTiimar bannee-see pahlee loog kaisee aayaa jaayaa kartee thee.  
kaun-saa ghaaT aanee-waalaa hai?  
kulii kis rang-kii wardii pahantee hāĩ.  
kulii ghaaT-par kyaa kaam kartee hāĩ.

## Situational Response

### musaafir:

aap kahāā-kee rahnee-waalee hāī, saahab.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii gangaa jaisii nadiyāā hī?  
kyaa aap soonpur jaa rahee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee saathii bhii amriikan hāī?  
aap hindustaan kyaa karnee aae hāī.  
hamaaraa hindustaan aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.  
amriikaa-mēē naawēē hāī yaa sTiimar?  
pul-kaa bannaa itnaa zaruurii kyōō hai.  
kyaa aap-nee kabhii baaRh deekhii?  
aap-nee apnii hindii kahāā siikhii hai.

### wideeśii:

aap haftee-mēē kitnii baar paTnaa jaatee rahtee hāī?  
sarkaar pul kyōō nahii banaatii.  
kyaa pahlee zamaanee-mēē bhii aisee sTiimar thee?  
paTnaa-mēē aap-kaa kyaa kaam hai.  
yee joo loog udhar baiThee hāī, kyaa wee bhii paTnaa aayaa jaayaa kartee hāī?  
pul baanaanee-mēē kitnaa paisaa lageegaa.  
sTeeśan-see pahleejaa ghaaT kitnii duur hai.  
agar sarkaar eek pul banaa dee, too aap-koo aaraam mileegaa, kyaa?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā angreezii paRhaanee-kaa prabandh hai?  
kyaa aap-kee deēś-mee ab bahut tarakkīi hoo rahii hai?

### saathii:

kyaa aap un musaafirōō-see kuch baat karēēgee?  
aap-koo too nīd nahīī aa rahii hai?  
ham kahāā baiThee.  
kyaa aap-nee kabhii baaRh deekhii hai?  
kyaa aap kuch aaraam karēēgee?  
kyaa aap musaafirōō-kii baat samajh sakēēgee?  
kyaa aap-kee deēś-mēē bhii itnii tarakkīi hoo rahii hai?  
ham soonpur rukēē, yaa muzaffarpur jaaēē?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii pāāc warśīiy yoojnaa hai?  
bataaiyee, pul-kaa bannaa itnaa zaruurii kyōō hai. aap-koo sTiimar pasand nahīī?

## Review Conversations

### tarakkii-kee baaree-mēē

1. A: kyaa aap rooz sTiimar-see hii aatee hāī?  
B: jii hāā, kyōō-ki yahāā paas-mēē kooii pul nahīī hai.  
A: yahāā too sarkaar-koo eek pul banaa deenaa caahiye.  
B: jii hāā, iraadaa too kar rahii hai, magar paisaa bahut lageegaa.  
A: pul ban jaaegaa, too aap loog aaraam-see paar jaa sakēēgee.  
B: hāā, magar kyaa karēē. sarkaar-koo paisee-kii kamii hai, aur is liye samay lageegaa.
2. A: bataaiyee saahab, aap-koo gāāw kaisaa lagaa.  
B: bahut acchaa lagaa. ab too bahut tarakkii hoo rahii hai.  
A: hāā. pichlii pāāc ršiiy yoojnāa-mēē eek saRak ban gaii. pahlee too gāāw-tak kooii sakak bhii nahīī thii.  
B: ab loog rooz šahar aayaa jaayaa kartee hāī.  
A: kyaa paRhnee paRhaanee-kaa bhii intizaam hai?  
B: hāā, bahut acchaa skuul hai. hindii, angreezii sab kuch paRhaatee hāī.
3. A: ab too aap-kee gāāw-mēē bahut tarakkii hoo rahii hai.  
B: hāā, deekhiyee, ab kitnii sundar saRkēē ban gaii hāī.  
A: jab pichlii baar māī aayaa thaa, too gāāw-mēē sirf tiin pakkee makaan thee.  
B: hāā, leekin ab too kii pakkee makaan ban gae.  
A: šaayad aglii pāāc waršiiy yoojnāa-mēē yee saarii saRkēē pakkii hoo jaaēē.  
B: hoo too jaanii caahiye, leekin abhi kuch kah nahīī saktaa.

### safar-kee baaree-mēē

4. A: aap šahar-mēē kyaa karnee jaa rahee hāī.  
B: mujhee sarkari daftar-mēē kuch kaam hai. aur aap?  
A: mujhee šahar-see kuch saamaan laana hai.  
B: too šahar kaisee jaa rahee hāī.  
A: sTiimar-see. kyaa aap bhii saath calēēgee?  
B: nahīī, māī too reel-see jaanee-kaa iraadaa kar rahaa thaa.

6. A: namastee guptaa jii, aaj bahut dinõõ-kee baad mulaakaat heo rahii hai.  
B: hãã, zaraa soonpur calaa gayaa thaa.  
A: kaisaa safar rahaa soonpur-kaa?  
B: kuch na puuchayee, soonpur-kaa s far bahut samay leetaa hai.  
A: kyõõ, wahãã Treen nahĩĩ jaatii kyaa?  
B: jaatii kyõõ nahĩĩ, leekin sTiimar-par tiin ghanTee lagtee hãĩ.  
A: hãã, wahãã abhi tak gangaa-par pul joo nahĩĩ banaa hai.

- .. A: aap loog kahãã jaa rahee hãĩ.  
B: paTnaa, aur aap?  
A: mãĩ too apnee eek doost-kee yahãã muzaffarpur jaa rahaa hũũ.  
B: kyaa aap-kee doost wahĩĩ-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?  
A: jii nahĩĩ, rahnee-waalee too wee dillii-kee hãĩ.  
B: acchaa, too wahãã kuch kaam kartee hõõgee.  
A: jii hãã, wahãã wee kuch byoopaar kartee hãĩ.

idhar udher-kii baat-ciit

7. A: kahiye saahab, amriikaa-kii sab-see lambii nadii kaun-sii hai.  
B: misisipii nadii hai.  
A: wah kahãã hai. uttar-mẽẽ yaa dakšĩN-mẽẽ.  
B: uttar-see dakšĩN-kii taraf bahtii hai.  
A: kyaa sTiimar bhi hãĩ, misisipii-par?  
B: misisipii-kee sTiimar bahut mašhuur hãĩ. kai pul bhi hãĩ, šaharõõ-mẽẽ.
8. A: kahiye, aap gããw-tak kaisee pahũcũẽgee.  
B: yahãã-see too Treen-see, aur phir bas-see.  
A: kyaa bas gããw-tak jaatii hai?  
B: nahĩĩ, abhi-tak saRak nahĩĩ banii hai. pããc miil paidal jaanaa hootaa hai.  
A: phir aap-koo jaanee-mẽẽ too bahut takliif hoogii?  
B: nahĩĩ, kooi takliif nahĩĩ hoogii. hamẽẽ paidal calnaa too bahut pasand hai.

Unit VIII Part A

Conversation

- 1 idhar-udhar-kii baat-ciit.  
2 ilaahaabaad, hinduu mitr-kee ghar-mēē.
- 
- 3 mišr jii: aaiyee aaiyee, bas aap-kii raah hii deekh rahaa thaa.  
4 makaan DhūūDhnee-mēē kooii kaThinaaai too nahīī huii.  
5 atithi: jii nahīī, kaThinaaai kaisee hootii, pataa too aap-nee Thiik-see likh diyaa thaa.  
6 mišr jii: padhaariyee. andar cal-kee baiThaa jaaee.  
7 atithi: kahiye kyaa samāacaar hai. sab kuṣal hai na?  
8 mišr jii: sab kuṣal hai. aap baiThiyee na?
- 
- 9 atithi: aap-kii patnii kahīī baahar gaii hāī, kyaa?  
10 mišr jii: kāā, un-kii eek bahan-kii ṣaadii hai. usii-mēē gaii hāī.  
11 atithi: phir aap akeele hōōgee. uṣaa jii wiṣwawidyaaalay-see waapas too nahīī aaii hōōgii.  
12 mišr jii: nahīī, wah too ghar-par hii hai. abhii andar bhoojan banaa rahii hai.  
13 aaiyee, jab-tak bhoojan taiyaar hootaa hai, tab-tak aap-koo apnaa makaan dikhaa dūū.
- 
- 14 atithi: makaan too nayaa banwaayaa huua jaan paRtaa hai.  
15 mišr jii: jii hāā, abhii pichlee warṣ hii banwaayaa hai.  
16 atithi: aap loog kaafii dhaarmik ruci-kee jaan paRtee hāī.  
17 mišr jii: apnaa dharm too maannaa hii hai. meerii patnii too binaa puujaa kiyee paanii bhii nahīī piitīī.  
18 atithi: tab too wee pratidin mandir jaatii hōōgii.  
19 mišr jii: nahīī, sirf tyoohaar-kee samay. udhar koonee-mēē hamaaraa puujaa karnee-kaa sthaan hai.
-

- 20                    deekhiyee, udhar rasooii-mēē uṣāa bhoojan banaa rahii hai.
- 21 atithi:           acchaa, aur wee aap-kee bartan hōōgee: thaalii, looTaa,  
                         gilaas, aadi.
- 22                    us sToobh-kaa kyaa naam hai, jis-par wah khaanaa pakaa rahii hai?
- 23 miṣr jii:           jis-mēē aag jal rahii hai? usee cuulhaa kahtee hāī. yah  
                         miTTii-kaa hootaa hai.
- 
- 24 atithi:           aap-kaa yah baag baRaa acchaa hai. us-mēē kyaa paidaa hootaa hai.
- 25 miṣr jii:           sab prakaar-kii ciizēē. mujhee phuul paudhee lagaanee-kaa  
                         bahut ṣauḳ hai.
- 26 atithi:           makaan too aap-nee waastaw-mēē baRii acchii jagah banwaayaa hai.
- 27 miṣr jii:           ab haath dhoo liijiye, aur caliyee bhoojan kar liyaa jaaee.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

M: miśr jii  
A: atithi

atithi	guest (m)
ilaahaabaad	Allahabad (city) (m)
mitr	friend (m)
1 <u>idhar-udhar-kii baat-ciit.</u>	<u>General conversation.</u>
2 <u>ilaahaabaad, hinduu mitr-kee</u> <u>gher-mēē.</u>	<u>Allahabad, in the home of a</u> <u>Hindu friend.</u>
bas	just, only (adv)
raah	way (f)
raah deekhnāa	to wait
3 M: <u>aaiyee aaiyee, bas aap-kii raah</u> <u>hii deekh rahaa thaa.</u>	<u>Come in please, I was just waiting</u> <u>for you.</u>
kaThinaaii	difficulty
4 M: <u>makaan DhūuDhnee-mēē kooii</u> <u>kaThinaaii too nahīi huii.</u>	<u>You didn't have any trouble finding</u> <u>the house did you?</u>
wah kaisee hootaa	how could that be
Thiik-see	correctly
5 A: <u>jii nahīi, kaThinaaii kaisee</u> <u>hootii, pataa too aap-nee</u> <u>Thiik-see likh diyaa thaa.</u>	<u>No, how could there have been any</u> <u>difficulty; you wrote down the</u> <u>address quite clearly.</u>
padhaarnāa	to proceed (polite)
6 M: <u>padhaariyee. andar cal-kee</u> <u>baiThaa jaaee.</u>	<u>Please, let's go in and sit down.</u>
samaacaar	news (m)
kuśal	fine
7 A: <u>kahiye kyaa samaacaar hai.</u> <u>sab kuśal hai na?</u>	<u>What's the news? Is everything</u> <u>all right?</u>
8 M: <u>sab kuśal hai. aap baiThiye na?</u>	<u>Everything is fine, please sit</u> <u>down.</u>



	patnii	wife
9 A:	<u>aap-kii patnii kahĩĩ baahar</u> <u>gail hãĩ, kyaa?</u>	<u>Has your wife gone out?</u>
	bahan	sister (f)
	un-kii eek bahan	one of her sisters
	šaadii	marriage
	šaadii-mẽẽ jaanaa	to go to a marriage
10 M:	<u>hãã, un-kii eek bahan-kii</u> <u>šaadii hai. usii-mẽẽ gail</u> <u>hãĩ.</u>	<u>Yes, one of her sisters is getting</u> <u>married. She has gone there.</u>
	akeelaa	alone (adj)
	wišwawidyaaalay	university (m)
11 A:	<u>phir aap akeele hõõgee. usaa</u> <u>jii wišwawidyaaalay-see waapas</u> <u>too nahĩĩ aaii hõõgii.</u>	<u>Then you must be alone. Usha</u> <u>probably hasn't come back at</u> <u>from the university.</u>
	bhoojan	food, meal (m)
	bhoojan banaanaa	to cook
12 M:	<u>nahĩĩ, wah too ghar-par hii</u> <u>hai. abhii andar bhoojan</u> <u>banaa rahii hai.</u>	<u>No she is at home. Now she is</u> <u>inside cooking.</u>
13 M:	<u>aaiyee, jab-tak bhoojan taiyaar</u> <u>hootaa hai, tab-tak aap-koo</u> <u>apnaa makaan dikhaa dũũ.</u>	<u>Come, let me show you the house</u> <u>until the food is ready.</u>
	jaan paRnaa	to appear
14 A:	<u>makaan too nayaa banwaayaa huaa</u> <u>jaan paRtaa hai.</u>	<u>This looks like a new house.</u>
	warš	year (m)
15 M:	<u>jii hãã, abhii pichlee warš</u> <u>hii banwaayaa hai.</u>	<u>Yes, we had it built last year.</u>
	ruci	interest (f)
16 A:	<u>aap loog kaafii dhaarmik ruci-</u> <u>kee jaan paktee hãĩ.</u>	<u>You people seem very religious</u> <u>minded.</u>
	maannaa	to observe, obey
	puujaa	worship (f)
	binaa puujaa kiye	without having worshipped
17 M:	<u>apnaa dharm too maannaa hii hai.</u> <u>meerii patnii too binaa puujaa</u> <u>kiye paanii bhii nahĩĩ piĩĩĩ.</u>	<u>It's important to observe religious</u> <u>rules. My wife doesn't even drink</u> <u>water without worshipping.</u>
	pratidin	every day (adv)
18 A:	<u>tab too wee pratidin mandir jaatii</u> <u>hõõgii.</u>	<u>Then she must go to the temple</u> <u>every day.</u>

	tyoohaar	festival (m)
	koonaa	corner
19 M:	<u>nahii, sirf tyoohaar-kee samay.</u> <u>udhar koonee-meẽ hamaaraa</u> <u>puujaa karnee-kaa sthaan hai.</u>	<u>No, only on festival days. There</u> <u>in the corner is our place for</u> <u>worship.</u>
	rasooii	kitchen
20 M:	<u>deekhiyee, udhar rasooii-meẽ</u> <u>uśaa bhoojan banaa rahii hai.</u>	<u>Look, there in the kitchen Usha</u> <u>is cooking.</u>
	thaalii	eating tray
	looTaa	small container, for water
	aadi	etc. (adv)
21 A:	<u>acchaa, aur wee aap-kee bartan</u> <u>hõõgee: thaalii, looTaa,</u> <u>gilaas, aadi.</u>	<u>Yes, and those must be your kitchen</u> <u>utensils: thali, lota, glass, etc.</u>
	sToobh	stove (m)
	pakaanaa	to cook
22 A:	<u>us sToobh-kaa kyaa naam hai,</u> <u>jis-par wah khaanaa pakaa</u> <u>rahii hai?</u>	<u>What is that stove called on which</u> <u>she is cooking?</u>
	aag	fire (f)
	cuulhaa	oven (m)
23 M:	<u>jis-meẽ aag jal rahii hai?</u> <u>usee cuulhaa kahtee hãĩ.</u> <u>yah miTTii-kaa hoetaa hai.</u>	<u>The one where the fire is? That is</u> <u>called chula; it is made of clay.</u>
	baag	garden (m)
	paidaa hoonaa	to grow, be born
24 A:	<u>aap-kaa yah baag baRaa acchaa</u> <u>hai. us-meẽ kyaa paidaa</u> <u>hoetaa hai.</u>	<u>Your garden is very beautiful. What</u> <u>do you grow in it?</u>
	paudhaa	plant
	phuul paudhee lagaanaa	to plant plants and flowers
	śauk	fondness (m)
25 M:	<u>sab prakaar-kii ciizẽẽ. muhee</u> <u>phuul paudhee lagaanee-kaa</u> <u>bahut śauk hai.</u>	<u>All kinds of things. I am very</u> <u>fond of planting flowers and</u> <u>plants.</u>
	waastaw	real (adj)
	waastaw-meẽ	in reality
26 A:	<u>makaan too aap-nee waastaw-meẽ</u> <u>baRii acchii jagah banwaayaa hai.</u>	<u>Really, you've made your house a very</u> <u>beautiful place.</u>
	bhoojan karnaa	to eat
27 M:	<u>ab haath dhoo liijiye, aur cal</u> <u>ealiyee bhoojan kar liyaa</u> <u>jaaye.</u>	<u>Now if you'll please wash your</u> <u>hands and come with me, we'll</u> <u>have something to eat.</u>

## Cultural Notes

In this unit, we visit a Hindu home and a Muslim home. A vast range of what may be called styles of living may be found in modern India; at one extreme of this range is the simple village style, little removed from traditional modes of life, while at the other extreme is a sophisticated urban style little different in furniture styles and amenities from that found in the West. A wide latitude of choice of style of living remains to each family among the educated, though a family's choice is of course conditioned to some extent by economic and other factors just as in the West. Individuals who have received advanced Western education and who are thoroughly conversant with Western culture and modes of living may prefer a traditional style of life quite unlike that of the West while continuing to cultivate an appreciation of Western literature. Similarly, even financially comfortable members of the urban middle class may prefer a very simple style of life with a minimum of furniture and Western household objects. On the other hand, the Western-educated can also be found living in modern urban flats differing little in appearance from those in any big Western city, as in Unit VI.

The Hindu home we see in this lesson is that of a well-known scholar living in Allahabad, which falls in the middle range of Indian cities with a population of between 200,000 and 300,000. The house is only a few years old and combines a modern exterior and modern utilities with a traditional house plan. The style of living it embodies is reasonably typical among the Indian middle class and such homes are a common feature of many cities. One enters the brick structure by a street entrance; the windows of the facades are usually kept closed because of the heat. The guest is conducted into the first room facing the street, a parlor which is used to receive visitors and friends. The inner part of the house contains a patio surrounded by the veranda. Here most family activities take place. Among the rooms entered from the patio are the kitchen and rooms devoted to worship and several sleeping rooms. Meals are taken on the veranda or in the patio. Unlike Western homes, Indian homes rarely have fixed sleeping quarters. People sleep on light cots which are easily moved to whatever part of the house seems most comfortable -- the veranda or roof in hot weather, indoors in cold weather. A staircase leads from the patio to the second floor, where there are additional sleeping rooms, workrooms and storerooms. The flat roof also serves as a work and recreation area. At the back of the house is a garden, as many Indians are fond of flowers. Behind the garden is a stable in which many urban Indians keep a cow, since in cities like Allahabad which have experienced enormous expansion in recent years, municipal services are not always reliable and a cow at least insures a steady milk supply.

The kitchen is kept intentionally traditional, and because of the ritual importance of food and cooking, there has been less change here than in other parts of the house. The mistress of the household does the cooking, while the one or two servants usual in this class do cleaning and such heavy jobs as carrying water. The most important structure in the kitchen is the cuulhaa or adobe stove and oven on which most food is prepared. In traditional kitchens, the stove is fueled with wood and cow-dung, though charcoal is also used. The kitchen area is kept scrupulously clean and one usually takes off one's shoes before entering -- if ritual restrictions do not prevent all but immediate members of the family from entering. Hanging on the walls or sitting on the floor about the stove are bright copper or stainless steel cooking vessels so arranged that the cook crouching before the stove can reach any necessary item. Among the most important of these are the thaalii, the brass plate, and the looTaa, a small pot for water or ghii. In serving a meal, the wife places bread and/or rice on the thaalii. Small bowls of vegetable and/or meat curry, daal, dahii and condiments are spaced around the edge of the round thaalii. Each member of the family then receives his thaalii.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
mitr (m)	doost (m)	friend
kaThin	muškil	difficult
samaacaar (m)	ḵhabar (f)	news
patnii	biiwii	wife
warṣ (m)	baras (m)	year
ruci (f)	dilcaspī	interest
pratidin	rooz	every day (adv)
aadi	wagairah	et cetera (adv)
waastaw-mēē	asal-mēē	in reality (adv)
wiwaah (m)	ṣaadii	marriage

### 2. Related word pairs

patnii	wife	pati	husband (m)
maannaa	to observe	manaanaa	to celebrate
paidaa hoonaa	to grow, be born	paidaa karnaa	to raise

### 3. Additional terms for family relationships

maataa	mother (f) (formal)
pitaa	father (formal)
māā	mother (f) (colloquial)
baap	father (m) (colloquial)
caacaa	uncle father's younger brother
taauu	uncle (m) father's older brother
pariwaar	family (m)
bahan	sister (f)
bhaaii	brother (m)
daadaa	grandfather
daadii	grandmother
bhaabhii	older brother's wife
mausii	mother's sister
riṣṭeedaar	relative (m)

#### 4. Terms for marriage

mišr jii-kii bahan-kii šaadii huii.      Misraji's sister got married.  
mišr jii-kii bahan-kii šaadii      Misraji's sister married Sharmaji.  
    šarmaa jii-see huii.  
mišr jii-nee bahan-kii šaadii kii.      Misraji arranged for his sister's marriage.

Traditionally in India, marriages were arranged by the families concerned and the bride and groom took no active part in the arrangements. This is reflected in the use of the intransitive verb phrase such as us-kii šaadii huii, to render what in English is expressed as 'he got married'. The Hindi expression for 'he married Sita,' is us-kii šaadii siitaa-see huii, literally 'his wedding with Sita took place. The transitive expression 'kisii-kii šaadii karnaa' means to arrange for a marriage (usually someone else's).

#### 5. Additional vocabulary

-kee alaawaa	aside from (post positional construction)
chat (f)	roof

## Rapid Response

Beginning with this unit, rapid response questions refer to each of the several sub-sections of the conversation and precede the grammar drills.

### Group 1

kis saahab-see mulaakaat hoo rahii hai?  
kyaa aap-kee mitr urduu bool rahee hai?  
miśr jii kis-kii raah deekh rahee thee.  
kyaa atithi-koo makaan DhūūDhnee-mēē kaThinaai huii?  
miśr jii kahāā rahtee hai.  
kyaa miśr jii-nee Thiik pataa diyaa hai?  
kis ciiz-kee baaree-mēē baat huii?  
kyaa atithi miśr jii-koo pahlee-see jaantee thee?  
miśr jii-kii haalat kaisii hai.  
loog baahar khaRee hootee hai yaa andar jaatee hai?

### Group 2

kyaa miśr jii-kee patni hai.  
'Mrs.' miśr kahāā gaii thi.  
kis-kii šaadii hoo rahii hai?  
kyaa miśr jii akeele thee?  
uśaa jii kyaa kar rahii hai.  
bhoojan-kii urduu kyaa hai.  
kyaa bhoojan taiyaar thaa?  
uśaa jii kahāā paRhtii hai.  
miśr jii-kee saath aur kaun loog rahtee hai.  
andar jaanee-kee samay miśr jii kyaa kahtee hai.

### Group 3

jab-tak bhoojan taiyaar hootaa hai, tab-tak loog kyaa kartee hai?  
kyaa makaan puraanaa jaan paRtaa hai?  
makaan kis saal-mēē banaayaa thaa.  
miśr jii kis dharm-koo maantee hai.  
kyaa 'Mrs.' miśr kam dhaarmik ruci-kii hai?  
kyaa miśr jii rooz mandir jaatee hai?  
puujaa kahāā kii jaatii hai.  
kyaa musalmaan loog bhii puujaa kartee hai?  
pratidin-kii urduu kyaa hai.  
kyaa makaan puraane tariike-kaa hai?

#### Group 4

rasooii kis-koo kahtee hāĩ.  
bhoojan kaun banaa rahaa hai.  
rasooii-měẽ kaun-see bartan hāĩ.  
bhoojan kis ciiz-par banaayaa jaataa hai.  
kyaa ušaa jii khaRii hoo-kar bhoojan banaa rahii hāĩ?  
cuulhaa kis ciiz-kaa banaa hai.  
kyaa amriikaa-měẽ bhii cuulhee hootee hāĩ?  
thaalii kis-koo kahtee hāĩ.  
aag kahāã jal rahii hai.  
bartan kis ciiz-kee banee hāĩ?

#### Group 5

baag-měẽ kyaa paidaa hootaa hai.  
mišr jii-koo kis ciiz-kaa šauk hai.  
kyaa makaan atithi-koo pasand hai?  
bhoojan karnee-kee pahlee kyaa karnaa caahiyee.  
baag kyaa ciiz hai.  
kyaa mišr jii phuul bhii paidaa kartee hāĩ?  
kyaa chat-par bhii rahnee-kii jagah hai?  
mišr jii-kee yahāã kyaa khaatee hõõgee.  
kyaa šauk hindii-kaa lafz jaan paRtaa hai?  
makaan-kee alaawaa mišr jii kyaa dikhaa rahee hāĩ.  
makaan mišr jii-nee kaisii jagah banwaayaa hai.

## Grammar Drills

### Pattern 1

kaThinaaai kaisee hootii? Why should there have been any difficulty?

The meaning of the -taa participle in constructions like the above is similar to that in 'contrary to fact' constructions.

#### A. Substitution-agreement drill

Why should there have been difficulty?

(kaThinaaai) kaisee hootii.

kaam

takliif

jaldii

deer

paisee-kii zaruurat

fursat

#### B. Conversational response drill

##### Instructor

You didn't have any trouble in looking for the building, did you?

makaan DhũDhnee-mẽẽ kooii kaThinaaai too nahĩĩ huii.

šahar-mẽẽ aap-koo kooii pareešaanii too nahĩĩ huii.

bas-see jaanee-mũẽ aap-koo takliif too nahĩĩ huii.

wahãã aap-koo jaldii too nahĩĩ huii.

pahũcnee-mẽẽ aap-koo deer too nahĩĩ huii.

šahar-mẽẽ aap-koo paisee-kii zaruurat too nahĩĩ huii.

jaaRee-mẽẽ aap-koo fursat too nahĩĩ huii.

safar-mẽẽ aap-koo paisee-kii kamii too nahĩĩ huii

##### Class

Why should there have been difficulty?

kaThinaaai kaisee hootii.

pareešaanii kaisee hootii.

etc.

### Pattern 2

#### A. Substitution-agreement drill

Your house looks brand new.

(makaan) too baRaa nayaa jaan paRtaa hai.

juutce

masjid

cuulhaa

thaaliyãã

baag



B. Substitution-agreement selection drill

Select an appropriate adjective or noun to go with the noun phrase in the first parenthesis.

The utensils in Jaipur seemed to be of brass.

( <u>jaipur-kee</u> bartan)	( <u>piital-kee</u> ) jaan <u>paRtee</u> <u>thee</u> .
mišr jii	dhaarmik ruci-kee
samaacaar	bahut acchaa
saahab	wideešii
kulii	
saaRiyāā	
miThaaiyāā	
laRkiyāā	
wišwanaath galii	
dechaat	

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: How did you like wišwanaath galii?

1st Student: It seemed very narrow.

Instructor: wišwanaath galii kaisii lagii.

1st Student: bahut sākrii jaan paRii.

Instructor: aaj-kee samaacaar kaisee lagee.

2nd Student: bahut kharaab jaan paRee.

Instructor

buland darwaazaa kaisaa lagaa.  
gangaa nadii kaisii lagii.  
stiimar-kaa safar kaisaa lagaa.  
mišr jii-kaa makaan kaisaa lagaa.  
jaaRee-kaa mausam kaisaa lagaa.  
dhuup kaisii lagii.  
dechaat-kaa safar kaisaa lagaa.  
mišr jii-kii patnii kaisii lagii.  
lamaašaa kaisaa lagaa.  
gangaa-kii naawēē kaisii lagii.

Use any appropriate answer.

Pattern 3      -aa or -taa participles used as adjectives or nouns.

makaan nayaa banwaayaa huaa jaan paRtaa hai.

The building seems newly built.

eek nayaa banwaayaa huaa makaan.

A newly built building.

eek sahaaranpur jaataa huaa aadmi.

A man going to Saharanpur.

In these constructions, both the huua and the -taa or -aa participle agree in number and gender with the subject. The huua has grammatical function only and no separate English translation equivalent.

## A. Substitution-agreement drill

This building seems to be very newly built.

(yah makaan) bahut nayaa banwaayaa huua jaan paRtaa hai.  
 aap-kii saaRii  
 yahaa-kii saRkēē  
 nadii-kaa pul  
 udhar-kee ghaaT  
 masjid

## B. Transformation drill

Instructor

The garden has been put in recently.

baag kuch din pahlee lagaayaa hai.  
 khaanaa abhii abhii pakaayaa hai.  
 pul pichlee saal banwaayaa hai.  
 saamaan udhar rakhaa hai.  
 laRkiyaā udhar khaRii hāī.  
 pataa Thiik-see likhaa hai.  
 miśr jii-kii patnii baahar gaii hāī.  
 thaaliyaā piital-kii banii hāī.  
 yee gilaas abhii abhii dhooee hāī.  
 us-kii saaRii kal khariidii hai.

Class

The garden seems to have been put in recently.

baag kuch din pahlee lagaayaa huua jaan paRtaa hai.  
 khaanaa abhii abhii pakaayaa huua jaan paRtaa hai.  
 etc.

## Pattern 4

## A. Substitution drill

Let me show you around the house until the food is ready.

jab-tak (bhoojan taiyaar hootaa hai), tab-tak makaan dikhaa dūū.  
 dhoobii aataa hai  
 juutee-kii marammat hootii hai  
 samaacaar aataa hai  
 aap-kii bahan aatii hai  
 thaalii taiyaar hootii hai  
 aag jal rahii hai  
 lassii banaaii jaatii hai

## B. Transformation drill

### Instructor

Let me show you the house before the food is ready.

bhoojan taiyaar hoonee-kee pahlee, aap-koo makaan dikhaa dūū.  
pul banaaee jaanee-kee pahlee, sTiimar-see paar karnaa paReegaa.  
aag jalnee-kee pahlee, sabzii lee aaūūgaa.  
pauhee paidaa hoonee-kee pahlee, phuul baahar-see māgaaūūgaa.  
puujaa karnee-kee pahlee, baahar khaRee rahēēgee.  
bahan-kii šaadii hoonee-kee pahlee, safar kar sakūūgee.  
samaacaar aanee-kee pahlee, ghar lauTūūgaa.  
sTiimar chuuTnee-kee pahlee, andar baiThēēgee.  
gaarii pahūcnee-kee pahlee, ham ūThēēgii.

### Class

Let me show you around the house until the food is ready.

jab-tak bhoojan taiyaar hootaa hai, tab-tak makaan dikhaa dūū.  
jab-tak pul banaayaa jaataa hai, tab tak sTiimar-see paar karnaa paReegaa.  
jab-tak aag jaltii hai, tab-tak sabzii lee aaūūgaa.  
jab-tak pauhee paidaa hotee hāī, tab-tak phuul baahar-see māgaaūūgaa.  
jab-tak puujaa kartii hāī, tab-tak baahar khaRee rahēēgee.  
jab-tak bahan-kii šaadii hootii hai, tab-tak safar kar sakēēgee.  
etc.

## Pattern 5

### A. Substitution drill

Her sister is getting married.

(us-kii) bahan-kii šaadii hoo rahii hai.  
meerii mausii-kii  
mišr jii-kii  
meeree mitr-kii  
meeree eek rišteedaar-kii  
meeree saathii-kii  
mišr jii-kee doost-kii

### B. Substitution drill

Her sister is getting married to Sharmaji.

us-kii bahan-kii šaadii (šarmaa jii)-see hoo rahii hai.  
mišr jii  
meeree bhaaii  
meeree caacaa  
meeree mitr-kee bhaaii  
mišr jii-kee bhaaii  
meeree eek rišteedaar

## C. Substitution-agreement selection drill

His brother is getting married to Sita.

us-kee (bhaaii)-kii Šaadii (siitaa)-see hoo rahii hai.  
           doost-kee bhaaii      ušaa  
           rišteedaar-kee bhaaii  
           bahan-kii doost  
           maataa jii-kii doost  
           pitaai jii-kee saathii.

Use any appropriate male or female name for the second item in parenthesis.

## D. Transformation drill

InstructorClass

Misraji's daughter got married.

Misraji arranged his daughter's marriage.

mišr jii-kii laRkii-kii Šaadii huii.

mišr jii-nee laRkii-kii Šaadii kii.

us-kee mitr-kii bahan-kii Šaadii huii.

us-kee mitr-nee bahan-kii Šaadii kii.

taauu-kii laRkii-kii Šaadii huii.

etc.

caacaa-kee laRkee-kii Šaadii huii.

mišr jii-kee atithi-kii laRkiyōō-kii Šaadii huii.

us-kee bhaaii-kii Šaadii ušaa jii-see huii.

meeree rišteedaar-kii Šaadii mitr-kii bahan-see huii.

taauu-kee doost-kii Šaadii Šarmaa jii-kii bahan-see huii.

## Pattern 6

## A. Stylistic alternation drill

Tell me what's the news today.

Instructor: kahiye kyaa khabar hai.

Class: kahiye kyaa samaacaa hai.

Instructor

wah kaali-j-mēē paRhtii hai.

bhoojan taiyaar hai.

makaan too baRaa nayaa jaan paRtaa hai.

usee pichlee warē hii banwaayaa thaa.

wah pratidin mandir jaatii hai.

udhar puujaa karnee-kaa sthaan hai.

makaan aap-nee asal-mēē baRii acchii jagah banwaayaa hai.

ab ijaazat diijiye, hamēē jaanaa hai.

us-nee bas-kee safar-kee baaree-mēē bataayaa.

sab iīšwar-kii kripaa hai.

raastee-mēē kooii takliif too nahīī huii.

padhaariye, andar cal-kee baiThēēgee.

dukaan-mēē thaalii, bartan, looTee wagairah milee.

sabhi kism-kee loogōō-see mulaakaat huii hoogii.

kyaa kal aap-koo samay hai?

wec saRak-kee kinaaree-par pustakēē beec rahee hāī.

jaisii aap-kii icchaa.

aaiyee aaiyee, aap hii-kaa intizaar kar rahaa thaa.

Šaayad Treen-mēē kuch aaraam karēēgee.

pahlee loog us prakaar-kii naawōō-mēē aayaa jaayaa kartee thee.

## Situational Response

### mišr jii:

kahiyee kyaa samaacaar hai.  
aap-kee yahāā kis kism-kaa cuulhaa hootaa hai.  
makaan DhūūDhnee-mēē kuch kaThinaaii huii hoogii.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii cuulhaa hootaa hai?  
aap-kii patnii too kuśal-see hōōgii.  
kyaa aap-kee baal baccee hāī?  
kyaa aap akeele aaee?  
kyaa aap-nee hamaaraa wiśwawidyaaalay deekhaa hai?  
kyaa aap-koo bhii paudhee lagaanee-mēē ruci hai?  
kyaa amriikaa-mēē aap-kaa apnaa makaan hai?  
māī-nee too pataa Thiik-see likh diyaa thaa na?  
aap-kee kitnee bhaaii bahan hāī.  
jab-tak bhoojan taiyaar hootaa hai, tab-tak kyaa karēēgee.  
hamaaraa makaan aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii loog dhaarmik ruci-kee hāī?  
aap-kee deē-mēē too piital-kee bartan nahīī hōōgee?  
bhoojan aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.  
makaan-kee alaawaa aap-nee kyaa deekhaa.  
aap-kee yahāā too kaaRee hoo-kar khaanaa pakaatee hōōgee na?  
kyaa aap-kee ghar-par sab kuśal hai?

### atithi:

aap-koo meeraa zyaadaa intizaar too nahīī karnaa paRaa.  
kyaa aap-kee patni hai?  
aap-kee kitnee baccee hāī.  
uśaa jii abhii kahāā hāī.  
aap-kee ghar-mēē kitnee kamree hāī.  
garmii-mēē aap kahāā sootee hāī, baahar yaa andar.  
aap-nee phuul paudhee kyōō lagaate.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bijlii-see khaanaa nahīī pakaatee?  
aap-kee yahāā mirc too bahut Daaltee hōōgee, khaanee-mēē.

kyaa aap rooz mandir jaatee hai?  
aap-kee yahẽã sab-see baRee tyoohaar kaun-see hai.  
kyaa amriikaa-mẽẽ aap-kee aur bhii mitr hai?  
ũsaa jii kaun-sii bhaaũaaẽẽ paRh rahii hai.  
aap-kee ghar-mẽẽ puujaa kahãã kii jaatii hai.  
aap kiẽ-kii raah deekh rahee thee.  
uũsaa jii kahĩĩ baahar gaii hai, kyaa?  
kyaa uũsaa jii-kii ũaadii huii?  
aap-nee apnaa makaan kis saal-mẽẽ banwaayaa.  
ilaahaabaad-kee rahnee-waalee zyaadaatar kis dharm-kee hai.  
mandir aap-kee ghar-see kitnii duur hai.

## Review Conversations

### mitr-kee ghar-par

1. A: bahut dinõõ-baad aae, tumhaaree saamaan kahãã hãĩ?  
B: saamaan too sTeeŶan-par hii chooR diyaa.  
A: kyõõ? kyaa hamaaree saath Thairnee-kaa iraadaa nahĩĩ hai?  
B: nahĩĩ, mujhee Ŷaam-kii gaaRii-see madraas jaanaa hai.  
A: ghar-par sab kuŶal too hai na?  
B: jii hãã, sab kuŶal hai. eek mitr-kii Ŷaadii-mẽẽ jaa rahaa hũũ.
2. A: aap-koo yahãã pahũcnee-mẽẽ zyaadaa kaThinaaii too nahĩĩ huii.  
B: nahĩĩ, aap-nee too pataa Thiik-see likh diyaa thaa.  
A: padhaariyee, bhiitar baiThaa jaaee. thooRii caay banwaaũũ.  
B: caay too piyũũgaa, leekin pahlee haath mũh dhooũũgaa.  
A: acchaa, too andar cal-kee dhoo liijiyee.  
B: jaisii aap-kii icchaa.
3. A: kii dinõõ-see aap-kii raah deekhtii rahii. aap kyõõ nahĩĩ aae.  
B: kyaa karũũ, itnaa kaam thaa, ki fursat nahĩĩ milii.  
A: padhaariyee, baRii khuŶii huii, ki aa gaee.  
B: yah makaan aap-nee kab banwaayaa.  
A: isee too pichlee saal hi banwaayaa hai.  
B: kaafii lambaa cauRaa hai aur bahut sundar bhii.

### idhar udhar-kii baat-ciit

4. A: sunaaiyee miŶr jii, kyaa samaacaar hai.  
B: sab Thiik hai. aap-kii meharbaanii hai.  
A: ham-nee sunaa, ki uŶaa jii kuch biimaar thĩĩ.  
B: hãã, thooRii sii biimaar thii, leekin ab too Thiik hai.  
A: wee kahãã hãĩ, is samay.  
B: ab too wiŶwawidyaalay-mẽẽ paRh rahii hai, leekin doo tiin dinõõ-mẽẽ chuTtii hoogii aur phir lauTegii.

5. A: kahiyeē śarmaa jii, aap too bilkul akeelee hāī, ghar-mēē. is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai.  
 B: meerii patnii baahar gaii hāī.  
 A: kooii takliif too nahīī hai?  
 B: nahīī, eek bahan-kii śaadii hai. usii-mēē gaii hāī.  
 A: yah too baRii kḥuśii-kii baat hai. kab lauTēēgii?  
 A: ee. doo dinōō-mēē lauTēēgii.

6. A: ham-nee sunaa, ki aap-kii laRkii-kii śaadii huii hai.  
 B: hāā, pichlee haftee huii.  
 A: too bahut loog aae hōōgee.  
 B: bahut loog aae, bhaai, bahanēē aadi. sab aae thee.  
 A: wee kitnee din rahee.  
 B: hamaaree yahāā śaadii-mēē too tiin din lagtee hāī.

bhoojan-kee baaree-mēē

7. A: kahiyeē aap-kee amriikaa-mēē khaanaa banaanee-kaa kyaa intizaam hai. cuulhee too nahīī hōōgee.  
 B: hamaaree yahāā too bijlii hai, pakaanee-kee liyee.  
 A: yah too baRii mahāgii hoogii.  
 B: mahāgii too hai, magar bijlii-see too bhoojan jaldii taiyaar hootaa hai.  
 A: kyaa naukār bhii hai, khaanaa banaanee-kee liyee.  
 B: nahīī, naukār too kisii-kee ghar-mēē nahīī hai.
8. A: bataaiyeē, yah thaalii kyaa ciiz hai.  
 B: thaalii-mēē khaanaa rakh diyaa jaataa hai, bhoojan-kee samay.  
 A: too aap loog pleet-mēē nahīī khaatee.  
 B: pleet bhii hāī, magar ham too zyaadaatar thaalii-mēē khaatee hāī.  
 A: kyaa eek kḥaas kamraa bhii hai, khaanee-kee liyee.  
 B: nahīī, kḥaas kamraa nahīī hai, har eek aadmii-koo apnii thaalii miltii hai.
9. A: aap too khaatee nahīī, śaayad aap-koo hamaaraa hindustaanii khaanaa acchaa nahīī lagtaa.  
 B: nahīī, bahut khaayaa.  
 A: kuch aur daal sabzii liijiyeē. is-mēē too mirc nahīī hai.  
 B: acchaa, thooRii-sii lūūgaa.  
 A: kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii aisaa khaanaa miltaa hai.  
 B: sabzii too kabhii kabhii banaatee hāī, magar daal bilkul nahīī miltii.



makaan-kee baaree-mēē

10. A: yah saamnee-kaa baag aap hii-kaa hai, kyaa?  
B: jii hāā, is-mēē kuch phuul, sabzii lagaa rakhii hai.  
A: too aap-koo paudhee lagaanee-kaa šauk hoogaa.  
B: hāā, meerii patnii-koo puujaa-kee liyee rooz phuul-kii aawašyaktaa hootii hai. is liyee phuul lagaa liyee hāī.  
A: too phuul mandir-mēē caRhaatii hōōgii.  
B: nahīī, yahāā ghar-mēē apnaa puujaa karnee-kaa sthaan hai.
11. A: yah makaan aap-nee too baRii acchii jagah banwaayaa hai.  
B: puraanee taariikee-kaa makaan hai.  
A: wah too bahut nayaa jaan paRtaa hai.  
B: pichlee saal banwaayaa thaa. leekin aap-kee yahāā jaisee kursii, meez, wagairah nahīī hāī.  
A: wahii too aap-kaa riwaaz hai. aap-koo too is makaan-mēē aaraam miltaa hoogaa.
12. A: is kamree-koo kyaa kahtee hāī.  
B: yah baiThnee-kaa kamraa hai.  
A: aur khaanaa kahāā banaayaa jaataa hai.  
B: wah too udhar rasooii-mēē banaayaa jaataa hai.  
A: aur aap sootee kahāā hāī.  
B: garmii-mēē too uupar chat-par sootee hāī, jaaRee-mēē andar sootee hai.

Unit VIII Part B

Conversation

- 1 eek musalmaan doost-kee ghar-par.  
2 aliigaRh-kee eek muhallee-měě.
- 
- 3 hamiid khaan: aadaab arz aziim saahab, aaiyee, aaiyee.  
4 aziim: aadaab arz khaan saahab. aap-see miliyee. hamiid khaan saahab,  
mis braaun.  
5 hamiid khaan: baRii khušii huii aap-see mil-kar. aaiyee, andar tašriif  
laaiyee.  
6 tašriif rakhiyee.
- 
- 7 aziim: mis braaun yahăă hamaarii urduu zabaan siikhnee aaii hăi.  
8 hamiid khaan: yee too baRii khušii-kii baat hai.  
9 kahiye kyaa khaatir karũũ, caay yaa šarbat?  
10 wideešii mehmaan: jii nahĩĩ, taḡalluf mat kiijiye. is waḡt too eek  
gilaas ThanDaa paanii kaafii hoogaa.  
11 šukriyaa.
- 
- 12 aziim: mis braaun-koo hamaaree rahan-sahan-kee baaree-měě baRii  
dilcaspīi hai.  
13 wideešii mehmaan: kyaa aam taur-par, har ghar-měě zanaanaa aur mardaanaa  
hissaa alag alag hootaa hai?  
14 hamiid khaan: jii hăă, aam taur-par. leekin is ghar-měě nahĩĩ. kyōōki  
meeree baal baccee nahĩĩ hăi.  
15 wideešii mehmaan: jis-par aap baiThee hăi, us-koo kyaa kahtee hăi.  
16 hamiid khaan: yee taḡht kahlaataa hai. is-par darii aur caadar bichii hăi.  
17 ham loogōō-koo too taḡht-par baiThnee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.  
kursii kam isteemaal kartee hăi. kyaa baḡkii makaan bhii  
dikhaa dũũ?  
18 wideešii mehmaan: jii hăă, aḡar aap-koo pareešaanii na hoo too.
-

- 19 yee itnee bahut see auzaar kis. liyee jamaa kar rakhee hāī?
- 20 hamiid khaan: ghar-mēē kooii kursii meez TuṭT jaaee, tco us-koo kḥud  
hii Thiik kar leetaa hūū.
- 21 is kamree-mēē māī apnee paRhnee likhnee-kaa kaam kartaa hūū.
- 22 wideešii mehmaan: acchaa, yee soonee-kaa kamraa hoogaa. yee khaaT hai.  
kyaa aap hameešaa andar sootee hāī?
- 23 hamiid khaan: sirf jaaRee-mēē. aaj-kal garmiyōō-mēē too macchardaanii  
lagaa-kar baraamdee-mēē sootee hāī.
- 

- 24 wideešii mehmaan: aap-kee baag-mēē bahut kḥuubsuurat phuul hāī. yee  
aap-nee yahāā paidaa kiyee hāī kyaa?
- 25 hamiid khaan: meeraa too bas yahii eek šauk hai. liijiyee, kuch phuul  
leetii jaaiyee.
- 26 wideešii mehmaan: ab ijaazat diijiyee. aap bahut pareešaan huee. bahut  
bahut šukriyaa.
- 27 hamiid khaan: bahut kḥušii huii. aap-too hamaaree mehmaan hāī. phir  
aaiyee, too itmiinaan-see baatēē hōōgii.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

H: hamiid khaan  
A: aziim  
W: mis braaun,  
wideešii mehmaan

- |      |   |  |
|------|---|--|
|      | mehmaan   | guest (m)  |
| 1    | <u>EEK musalmaan doost-kee ghar-par.</u>  | <u>At the home of a Muslim friend.</u>                               |
|      | muhallaa  | sector, district   |
| 2    | <u>aliigaRh-kee eek muhallee-mëë.</u>   | <u>In one part of Aligarh.</u>                                       |
|      | aadaab arz  | greeting (Muslim)  |
| 3 H: | <u>aadaab arz aziim saahab, aaiyee, aaiyee.</u>                                   | <u>Hello, Mr. Azim; come in, come in.</u>                            |
|      | aap-see miliyee   | meet him (her)   |
| 4 A: | <u>aadaab arz khaan saahab. aap-see miliyee. hamiid khaan saahab, mis braaun.</u> | <u>Hello, Mr. Khan. Let me introduce Miss Brown, Mr. Hamid Khan.</u> |
|      | tašriif   | graciousness (f)   |
|      | tašriif laanaa  | to come (polite)   |
| 5 H: | <u>baRii khušii huii aap-see mil-kar. aaiyee, andar tašriif laaiyee.</u>          | <u>I'm very pleased to meet you. Please won't you come inside?</u>   |
|      | tašriif rakhnaa   | to sit down (polite)   |
| 6 H: | <u>tašriif rakhiyee.</u>  | <u>Please be seated.</u>   |
|      | zabaan  | language (f)   |
| 7 A: | <u>mis braaun yahāā hamaarii urduu zabaan siikhnee aaii hai.</u>                  | <u>Miss Brown has come here to learn our Urdu language.</u>          |
|      | khušii-kii baat   | a matter of happiness.   |
| 8 H: | <u>yee too baRii khušii-kii baat hai.</u>   | <u>Why, that's wonderful.</u>  |
|      | khaatir   | honor, service (f)   |
|      | khaatir karnaa  | to serve (some one)  |
| 9 H: | <u>kahiye kyaa khaatir karūū, caay yaa šarbat?</u>                                | <u>What shall I offer you, tea or a soft drink?</u>                  |

	takalluf	formality (m)
	mat	negative particle
	is wakt	at this time
10 W:	<u>jii nahīī, takalluf mat</u> <u>kiīīyee. is wakt too eek</u> <u>gilaas Thandaa paanii kaafii</u> <u>hoogaa.</u>	<u>No thanks, don't go to any trouble.</u> <u>A glass of cold water will be</u> <u>fine just now.</u>
	Shukriyaa	thank you.
11 W:	<u>Shukriyaa.</u>	<u>Thank you.</u>
	sahnaa	to bear, undergo
	rahan-sahan	way of living (m)
	dileaspii	interest
12 A:	<u>mis braaun-koo namaaree rahan-</u> <u>sahan-kee baaree-mee baarii</u> <u>dileaspii hai.</u>	<u>Miss Brown is quite interested in</u> <u>our way of life.</u>
	aam	ordinary (adj)
	aam taur-par	normally
	zanaanaa	pertaining to women, feminine (adj)
	mard	man (m)
	mardaanaa	pertaining to men, masculine (adj)
	alag	separate (adj)
13 W:	<u>kyaa aam taur-par, har ghar-mēē</u> <u>zanaanaa aur mardaanaa hissaa</u> <u>alag alag hootaa hai?</u>	<u>Are the women's and men's sections</u> <u>of the house usually kept</u> <u>separate?</u>
	baal baccee	family, children
14 H:	<u>jii hāī, aam taur-par. leekin</u> <u>is ghar-mēē nahīī. kyōōki</u> <u>mceree baal baccee nahīī hāī.</u>	<u>Yes, usually, but not in my house,</u> <u>because I don't have any</u> <u>children.</u>
15 W:	<u>jis-par aap baiThee hāī, us-koo</u> <u>kyaa kahtee hāī.</u>	<u>What do you call the thing you're</u> <u>sitting on?</u>
	takht	board, sitting platform (m)
	kahlaanaa	to name something (trans)
	darii	rug, bedspread
	caadar	sheet, cloth (f)
	bichnaa	to be spread (intrans)
16 H:	<u>yee takht kahlaataa hai. is-par</u> <u>darii aur caadar bichii hāī.</u>	<u>This is called a takht. It's</u> <u>covered with a rug and a sheet.</u>

aadat	custom, habit (f)
mujhee aadat paR gaii	I've got used to (something)
isteemaal	use (m)
isteemaal karnaa	to use
17 H: <u>ham loogōō-koo too takht-par</u> <u>bailhnee-kii aadat paR gaii</u> <u>hai. kursii kam isteemaal</u> <u>kartee hāī. kyaa baakii</u> <u>makaan bhii dikhaa dūū?</u>	<u>We usually sit on a takht. We</u> <u>use chairs very little. Shall</u> <u>I show you the rest of the house</u> <u>too?</u>
pareeśaani	difficulty, trouble
18 W: <u>jii hāā, agar aap-koo pareeśaani</u> <u>na hoo too.</u>	<u>Yes, if it isn't too much trouble.</u>
auzaar	tool (m)
jamnaa	to solidify
jamaa	collected, together (adj)
jamaa karnaa	to collect
19 W: <u>yee itnee bahut see auzaar kis</u> <u>liyee jamaa kar rakhee hāī?</u>	<u>Why do you keep so many tools?</u>
Tuutnaa	to be broken (intrans)
Tuut jaanaa	to be broken (intrans)
khud	oneself
20 H: <u>ghar-mēē kooii kursii meez Tuut</u> <u>jaace, too us-koo khud hii</u> <u>Thiik kar leetaa hūū.</u>	<u>If any chair or table is broken</u> <u>in the house, I fix it myself.</u>
21 H: <u>is kamree-mēē māī apnee paRhnee</u> <u>likhnee-kaa kaam kartaa hūū.</u>	<u>In this room I do my reading and</u> <u>writing.</u>
soonee-kaa kamraa	bedroom
khaaT	bed, cot (f)
22 W: <u>acchaa, yee soonee-kaa kamraa</u> <u>hoogaa. yee khaaT hai. kyaa</u> <u>aap hameesaa andar sootee hāī?</u>	<u>Oh, I see from the cot that this</u> <u>must be your bedroom. Do you</u> <u>always sleep inside?</u>
garmiyōō-mēē	in the hot season
macchar	mosquito (m)
macchardaanii	mosquito net
baraamdaa	verandah
23 H: <u>sirf jaaRee-mēē. aaj-kal</u> <u>garmiyōō-mēē too macchardaanii</u> <u>lagaa-kar baraamdee-mēē sootee</u> <u>hāī.</u>	<u>Only in the winter. Nowadays, in</u> <u>the hot season, we put up a</u> <u>mosquito net and sleep on the</u> <u>verandah.</u>

suurat

khuubsuurat

paidaa karnaa

- 24 W: aap-kee baag-mēē bahut  
khuubsuurat phuul hāī. yee  
aap-nee yahāā paidaa kiyeē  
hāī kyaa?

leetaa jaanaa

- 25 H: meeraa too bas yahii eek šauk  
hai. liijiyeē kuch phuul  
leetii jaaiyeē.

pareēšaan

- 26 W: ab ijaazat diijiyeē. aap bahut  
parēēšaan hueē. bahut bahut  
šukriyaa.

itmiinaan

itmiinaan-see

- 27 H: bahut khušii huii. aap too  
hamaaree mehmaan hāī. phir  
aaiyeē, too itmiinaan-see  
baatēē hōōgii.

face, appearance (f)

beautiful (adj)

to grow, raise

What beautiful flowers you have  
in your garden. Did you raise  
them here?

to go away taking

This is my only hobby. Please  
take some flowers with you.

troubled, inconvenienced (adj)

Now you must excuse us. I'm  
afraid we've inconvenienced  
you. Thank you so much.

ease, comfort (m)

with ease

It was a pleasure. You are our  
guest. Come again and we'll  
talk at leisure.

## Cultural Notes

The home shown in this lesson is that of a Muslim college professor. It is built in the style of a British bungalow, another preferred building style among the educated in India. As in the Hindu house, the guest is received in a parlor containing few chairs. The host is seated on a wide, raised platform covered with pillows and padding (the takht), where most Indians prefer to sit and read or write, while the guest is usually asked to occupy a chair.

Traditional Muslim homes maintain a strict separation between the inner portion, called the zanaanaa, and the outer portion, the mardaanaa. Women traditionally spend most of their day in the zanaanaa, where most intimate family activities are carried on. In those homes where purdah is still observed, women do not leave the zanaanaa without the traditional burkaa, a tentlike garment which shrouds the wearer from head to toe against curious stares.

Despite considerable similarity in overall living patterns and food habits, some characteristic differences between Hindus and Muslims remain. Special Muslim foods include biryaanii (a mixture of meat, rice and vegetables), and certain sweets; but generalization is difficult, as foods vary both regionally and according to social and economic status as well as according to religious belief. As food plays a much less central part in Muslim than in Hindu ritual and belief, Muslims have taken more readily to the use of Western-style glassware and china.

A comparison of the vocabulary used in Units VIII A and B shows some of the most important differences between Hindi and Urdu politeness formulas. The over-all pattern of politeness is similar in both cases. Differences tend to appear in the vocabulary and motions of greetings, where the Hindu traditionally greets with folded hands, the Muslim with his right hand raised toward his face. Such formulas as an invitation to sit down, thank you, excuse me and so on may also vary. References to food, as in an invitation to dine, show expectable differences. The invitation "bhoojan kiijiyee," for instance, is preferred among Hindus but is not generally used among Muslims. Nicknames and pet names used in the family also show differences; and Muslim wives are referred to as "beegam" (polite), or, among some groups, "biiwii" while Hindu wives tend to be referred to as "patnii."

In interpreting these differences, however, particular forms of speech should not be too rigidly identified with particular social groups. Should the occasion demand, many Hindus have no hesitation in using Urdu politeness formulas and behavior. Muslims, when necessary, use Hindi politeness forms and even the folded-hands greeting. In the present era of rapid change, all these traditional formulas are undergoing considerable modification under the impact of urbanization, and many of the present differences may be obliterated over the course of the next several decades.

A few observations about personal naming practices in North India may help to avoid confusions often felt by Westerners when they observe what seem to be inconsistencies in these matters. The vast majority of Indians until about one hundred years ago lived in villages or small towns in which most individuals spent their whole lives. All members of these settlements were known at least by sight to each other, and Western-style last or family names



were not necessary. Every individual had a personal name (that is, the equivalent of a Western "first name") and one or more nicknames. People were often addressed simply by kinship terms such as "grandfather" or "aunt," depending on their age, sex, and relationship to the speaker. Village kin or jaati groups (often termed castes) all had group names often derived from their occupation, such as camaar (leatherworker) or soonaar (goldsmith). These names were not used by members of other jaati groups as terms of address. Instead, one or more honorifics (such as Thaakur saahab for a Rajput as in Unit IX-A) could be used to address members of the group without the familiarity implied by the use of an individual's personal name.

Something very like this system can still be found in rural parts of India; but about one hundred years ago, Indians, especially in cities, began to adopt the Western practice of the use of one or more personal names and a last name. This new "last" or "family" name was drawn from one of a number of sources. It was often a traditional group honorific, and sometimes a term for a public office which one or more members of the family had held under the Moghuls or the British. Even today there is very little standardization of practices in the choice of a last name; it need not be passed on from father to son, and brothers may choose to use different last names. Or a last name may be used in some contexts and not in others by the same individual. This is particularly true of last names used by very large numbers of people, such as Singh, Sharma, Gupta, and Khan. An individual who uses such a last name at least part of the time is often addressed merely by one or more of his personal names plus an honorific such as -jii or saahab. This suggests that an individual's given or personal name remains the most important name differentiating him from all other individuals, although last names continue to gain popularity.

## Word Study

### 1. Some typical politeness formulas

#### a. Urdu

tašriif rakhiyee	please sit down
tašriif laaiyee	please come in
šukriyaa	thank you
meharbaanii	thank you

aap kahāā-see tašriif laaee hāī.  
 ijaazat diijiyee.  
 bahut khušii huii aap-see mil-kar.  
 bahut khušii-kii baat hai.  
 taqalluf mat kiijiyee.  
 kyaa khaatir karūū?

Where are you from?  
 Would you excuse me, please?  
 I was very glad to meet you.  
 That's wonderful, I'm very glad.  
 Please don't go to any trouble.  
 What can I do for you?

In answer to inquiries about a person's health:

sab khudaa-kii meharbanii hai.  
 aap-kii dua hai.

All's well, thank God.  
 It's due to your kindness ...

#### b. Hindi

padhaariyee	please come in
biraajiyee	please sit down
aagyāā diijiyee	please excuse me
dhanyawaad	thank you

kyaa seewaa karūū?  
 bahut prasanntaa-kii baat hai.  
 aap-see mil-kar bahut prasanntaa huii.

What can I do for you?  
 That's wonderful, I'm very glad.  
 I was very glad to meet you.

In answer to inquiries about a person's health:

sab iišwar-kii kripaa hai.

All's well, thank God.

### 2. Some common greetings

aadaab arz	Used by Muslims to other Muslims or Hindus to Muslims.
salaamat	Well being, safety.
salaam aaleekum	Used among Muslims only.
namastee	Used among Hindus or among Hindus and Muslims.
namaskaar	Used largely among Hindus.
raam raam	Village greeting.

3. The pronoun aap is often used as a polite way of referring to a third person (not the person addressed) who is present at a conversation. wah and yah in such contexts would sound slightly rude. e.g.:

aap-see miliyee      Please meet her (i.e. our guest).

4. mat is used as a negative particle in requests:

taḱalluf mat kiijiyee. Don't go to any trouble.

5. Common opposites

ijaazat deenaa to permit manaa karnaa to forbid

us-nee andar jaanee-kii ijaazat dii. He gave permission to go in.

us-nee andar jaanee-see manaa kiya. He forbade entrance.

In the above constructions, manaa functions as an invariant adjective while ijaazat is a noun, hence the difference in grammatical form.

6. Other stylistic alternants

Hindi

bhaasaa (f)

prasanntaa (f)

dhanyawaad (m)

kaThinaaii

apnee aap

aagyāā (f)

Urdu

zabaan (f)

ḱhuṣii

ṣukriyaa

pareeṣaanii

ḱhud

ijaazat (f)

language

joy

thanks

difficulty

self (adv)

permission

7. Related word pairs

bichnaa to be spread

alag hoonaa to be separated

jamaa hoonaa to be collected, congregate

TuuTnaa to be broken

isteemaal hoonaa to be used

jamnaa to solidify, become frozen

bichaanaa to spread (trans)

alag karnaa to separate

jamaa karnaa to collect, save

TooRnaa to break (trans)

isteemaal karnaa to use

jamaanaa to consolidate, freeze

8. Expressions indicating permission to do something

us-nee baahar jaanee-kii ijaazat dii. He gave me permission to go out.

us-nee hamēē baahar jaanee diyaa. He let me go out.

Permission is expressed either by a noun phrase with ijaazat or by the oblique verbal infinitive followed by an inflected form of deenaa. The latter construction is grammatically similar to the oblique infinitive plus lagna meaning to start doing something:

wah boolnee lagtaa hai.

He starts speaking.

wah hamēē boolnee deetaa hai.

He lets me speak.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

baat kis ŷahar-mēē hoo rahii hai.  
namastee-kii urduu kyaa hai.  
aziim saahab kis-kee saath aae thee.  
kitnee loog hamiid khaan saahab-kee paas aae?  
mehmaan kahāā-kii rahnee-waalii thīī.  
kyaa hamiid saahab-koo fursat thii?  
mis braaun-kee saath kaun sajjan hāī.  
andar jaanee-kee waqt hamiid saahab-nee kyaa kahaa.  
taŷriif laaiyee-kii hindii kyaa hai.  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab mehmaan-see pahlee bhii milee thee?

### Group 2

mis braaun kis liyee hindustaan aai thīī.  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab-koo kuch kaam thaa?  
kyaa loogōō-koo baahar Thairnaa thaa?  
kyaa caay taiyaar thii?  
kyaa hamiid saahab mehmaan-kii urduu-see khuŷ thee?  
mis braaun-koo kyaa khaanaa milaa.  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab mehmaan-kii khaatir kartee hāī?  
sab-see acchii urduu kahāā boolii jaatii hai.  
ŷarbat kyaa ciiz hai.  
kyaa hamiid saahab-nee bahut taḱalluf kiyaa?

### Group 3

mis braaun-koo kis ciiz-kee baaree-mēē dilcaspī hai.  
makaan-kaa hissaa jis-mēē aurtēē rahtii hāī, kyaa kahlaataa hai.  
makaan-kee doo alag hissee kaun see hāī.  
mard kaun see hissee-mēē baiThtee hāī.  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab-koo kursii-par baiThnee-kii aadat hai?  
taḱht-par kyaa ciizēē bichii hāī?  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab-kee baal baccee hāī?  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab jawaan aadmī hāī?  
kyaa hamiid saahab-koo makaan dikhaanee-kee liyee fursat hai?  
mis braaun makaan kyōō deekhnaa caahtii hāī?

#### Group 4

auzaar hamiid saahab-kee ghar kis liyee rakhee hãĩ.  
ghar-mẽẽ kooii kursii TuuT jaaee, too kaun marammat kartaa hai.  
kyaa loog hameešaa eek kamree-mẽẽ sootee hãĩ?  
macchar-kii wajah-see kyaa ciiz lagaanii caahiye.  
kyaa jaaRee-kaa samay hai?  
hamiid saahab kyaa kaam kartee hãĩ.  
hamiid khaan saahab-nee kyaa ciiz jamaa kar rakhii hai.  
soonee-kaa kamraa kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
kyaa hamiid saahab mis braaun-koo urduu bhii paRhaatee hãĩ?  
mis braaun-koo kin ciizõõ-mẽẽ dilcaspai hai.

#### Group 5

hamiid khaan saahab-kee baag-mẽẽ kyaa paidaa hootaa hai.  
kyaa phuul baahar-see mǎgaaee gae hãĩ?  
hamiid khaan saahab-koo kin ciizõõ-kaa šauk hai.  
jab jaanee-kaa samay aataa hai, too mis braaun kyaa kahtii hãĩ.  
jab mis braaun phir aaẽẽgii, too kyaa hoogaa.  
kyaa hamiid khaan saahab mis braaun-see mulaakaat kar-kee khus huee?  
ijaazat kab leenii hai.  
makaan-kee alaawaa hamiid saahab kyaa dikhaatee hãĩ.  
hamiid khaan saahab phuul kis-liyee paidaa kartee hãĩ.  
jaanee-kee samay hamiid khaan saahab mehmaan-koo kyaa deetee hãĩ.

## Grammar Drills

## Pattern 1

## A. Substitution drill

Give me permission to go.

(jaanee)-kii ijaazat diijiye.  
 boolnee  
 caadar bichaanee  
 kursii isteemaal karnee  
 baahar soonee  
 macchardaanii lagaanee  
 phuul paidaa karnee  
 auzaar jamaa karnee  
 baahar khaRee rahnee

## B. Substitution drill

Let the sahab go.

saahab-koo (jaanee) diijiye.  
 boolnee  
 caadar bichaanee  
 kursii isteemaal karnee

Continue with the material  
 from drill A.

C. Repeat drills A and B in the negative using mat.

(jaanee)-kii ijaazat mat diijiye.

saahab-koo (jaanee) mat diijiye.

## D. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Did the sahab get permission to go inside?

kyaa saahab-koo andar jaanee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo kursii-par baiThnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo makaan deekhnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo urduu boolnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo khaan saahab-see mulaakaat karnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo ghar-meẽ bhoojan karnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo nadii paar karnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo thaalii isteemaal karnee-kii ijaazat milii?  
 kyaa saahab-koo baahar soonee-kii ijaazat milii?

Class

Yes, they let him go inside.

hãã, unhõõ-nee un-koo andar jaanee diyaa.  
 hãã, unhõõ-nee un-koo kursii-par baiThnee diyaa.  
 hãã, unhõõ-nee un-koo makaan deekhnee diyaa.

## Pattern 2

### A. Substitution drill

What do you call the thing you are sitting on?

jis-par aap (baiThee) hāĩ, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
khaRee hootee  
aaraam kartee  
sootee  
caltee  
caadar bichaatee  
khaaT lagaatee

### B. Substitution-agreement drill

What do they call that thing that has the fire in it?

jis-mēẽ (aag jal rahii) hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
khaanaa pakaatee  
mirc Daaltee  
sootee  
baiThee  
rahtee  
pudhee lagaatee

### C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What do they call the thing Khan Sahab was sitting on?

1st Student: They call it a taḡht.

Instructor: jis-par ḡhaan saahab baiThee thee, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ?

1st Student: jis-par ḡhaan saahab baiThee thee, us-koo taḡht kahtee hāĩ.

Instructor: jis-mēẽ uṣaa jii bhoojan banaa rahii thīĩ, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.

2nd Student: jis-mēẽ uṣaa jii bhoojan banaa rahii thīĩ, us-koo bartan kahtee hāĩ.

#### Instructor

jis ciiz-koo ḡhaan saahab-nee jamaa kar rakhaa hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis kamree-mēẽ ḡhaan saahab likhtee paRhtee hāĩ, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
joo kapRaa taḡht-par bichaayaa jaataa hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jin ciizōō-koo ḡhaan saahab paidaa kartee hāĩ, un-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
joo zabaan ḡhaan saahab bool rahee thee, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis mooTar-see wideeṣii sahaaranpur gayaa hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis-par loog nadii paar kartee hāĩ, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis makaan-mēẽ loog namaaz paRhtee hāĩ, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis jagah bas ruktii hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.  
jis kamree-mēẽ khaanaa pakaayaa jaataa hai, us-koo kyaa kahtee hāĩ.

## A. Substitution-agreement drill

Why did you collect so many tools?

yee itnee bahut see (auzaar) aap-nee kyōō jamaa kar rakhee hāī.

bartan  
kursiyāā  
thaaliyāā  
phuul  
meezēē  
phal

## B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Why did you collect so many tools?

1st Student: If something in the house should break, I'll use them.

Instructor: yee itnee bahut auzaar aap-nee kyōō jamaa kar rakhee hāī.

1st Student: ghar-mēē kooii ciiz TuuT jaaee, too un-koo isteemaal karūū.

Instructor: yee itnee bahut bartan aap-nee kyōō jamaa kar rakhee hāī.

2nd Student: kooii bartan TuuT jaaee, too inhīī bartanōō-koo isteemaal karūū.

Instructor

aap-nee itnii bahut kursiyāā kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

aap-nee itnii bahut thaaliyāā kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

aap-nee itnee bahut kapRee kyōō jamaa kar rakhee hāī.

aap-nee itnee bahut jhoolee kyōō jamaa kar rakhee hāī.

aap-nee itnii bahut meezēē kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

aap-nee itnii bahut macchardaanīyāā kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

aap-nee itnii bahut dariyāā kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

aap-nee itnii bahut caadarēē kyōō jamaa kar rakhii hāī.

## Pattern 4

## A. Conversational response drill

Instructor

Why do you sit like this?

aap aisee kyōō baiThtee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō khaatee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō sootee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō rahtee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō khaRee hootee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō booltee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō ciThii likhtee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō jawaab deetee hāī.

aap aisee kyōō baat kartee hāī.

Class

We've gotten used to sitting like this.

hamēē too aisee baiThnee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.

hamēē too aisee khaanee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.

hamēē too aisee soonee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.

hamēē too aisee rahnee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.

hamēē too aisee khaRee hoonee-kii aadat paR gaii hai.

etc.



Pattern 5

A. Stylistic alternation drill

He has come to learn the Urdu language.

Instructor:

wah urduu zabaan siikhnee aayaa hai.  
yah bahut khuṣii-kii baat hai.  
us-nee eek doost-kii bahan-see ṣaadii kii.  
mehmaan-kii seewaa karnii hai.  
sab khudaa-kii meharbaanii hai.  
aaiyee, taṣriif laaiyee.  
bahut ṣukriyaa, kuch nahīṯ caahiye.  
us-koo hamaaree rahan-sahan-kee baaree-mēē baRii dilcaspii hai.  
us-nee eek bahut khuubsuorat laRkii-see ṣaadii kii.  
yah too reeT-see zyaadaa hai.  
agar aap-koo aawaṣyaktaa hoo, too khool dūṯ.  
un-kaa pataa lagaanaa baRaa muṣkil hai.  
yee naii Dhang-kii dukaanēē hāṯ.  
wah rooz apnaa maal beecaa kartaa hai.  
aap-koo sab prasiddh imaartēē dikhaūṯgaa.  
meeraa khayaal hai ki baariṣ hoonee-waalii hai.  
kyaa wakt hai?  
māi-nee sTiimar-see yaatraa kii.  
wee aap-kee aanee-see bahut khuṣ huee.  
ijaazat diijiye, mujhee eek saahab-see milnaa hai.

B. Repeat the conversational exchanges below in a somewhat more Hindi-like style.

1. A: aap kahāṯ-see taṣriif laaee hāṯ.  
B: amriikaa-see hūṯ. aap-kii zabaan siikhnee aayaa hūṯ.  
A: yee too baRii khuṣii-kii baat hai.
- Repetition
- A: aap kahāṯ-see aae hāṯ.  
B: amriikaa-see hūṯ. aap-kii bhaaṣaa siikhnee aayaa hūṯ.  
A: yah too baRii prasanntaa-kii baat hai.
2. A: aaiyee, taṣriif laaiyee.  
B: kyaa khaatir karūṯ. kuch khaaēēgee too zaruur.  
A: bahut ṣukriyaa, kuch nahīṯ khaaēēgee.
3. A: aap-koo safar-mēē kooii takliif too nahīṯ huii.  
B: bhiiR-kii wajah-see, safar kuch muṣkil thaa.
4. A: ab ijaazat diijiye, mujhee eek saahab-see milnaa hai.  
B: taṣriif rakhiyee, bahut wakt hai.  
A: nahīṯ, ab too zaruur jaanaa hai.
5. A: aap-kii biiwii kahīṯ baahar gaii hai kyaa.  
B: nahīṯ, andar kuch khaanee-koo banaa rahii hai.
6. A: kahiye, aap-kii kyaa haalat hai.  
B: sab khudaa-kii meharbaanii hai.  
A: yee too baRii khuṣii-kii baat hai.

## Situational Response

### hindustaanii:

aap aziim saahab-koo kab-see jaantee hāī.  
kyaa aap-kee baal baccee hāī? bhaaii bahan hāī?  
urduu-kee alaawaa aap kyaa paRhtee hāī.  
aap hamaaree rahan-sahan-kee baaree-mēē kyaa jaannaa caahtee hāī.  
kyaa aap taḡht-par baiThnaa pasand karēēgee?  
kyaa aap-koo bhii baahar soonee-kii aadat hai?  
amriikaa-mēē aap kis ciiz-kaa byoopaar kartee hāī.  
kyaa aap-kee paas bhii baag hai?  
kyaa aap lakRii-kaa kaam bhii kar saktee hāī?  
kyaa aap apnee baag-see kuch phuul lee jaanaa pasand karēēgii?  
aap-kee yahāā kooii kursii meez TuuT jaaee, too kaun Thiik kareegaa.  
aap-koo kin kin ciizōō-kaa ṣauk hai.  
agar aap-kee yahāā kooii mehmaan aae, too aap us-kii kyaa khaatir karēēgee.  
kyaa aap-kaa rahan-sahan hamaaree rahan-sahan-see bahut alag hai?

### mehmaan:

kyaa yahāā kaafii loog urduu zabaan paRhtee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii cuulhaa hai, khaanaa pakaanee-kee liyee, yaa bijlii?  
kyaa aap-kee baal baccee hāī?  
aam taur-par aap kahāā baiThtee hāī?  
kyaa aap yee phuul baahar-see māgaatee hāī?  
khaaT-par aap kyaa bichaatee hāī.  
garmiyōō-mēē aap kahāā sootee hāī.  
kyaa macchar bahut takliif deetee hāī?  
taḡht kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
kyaa aap-kee auzaar yahāā banaae jaatee hāī?  
kyaa aap hindii bhii booltee hāī?  
kyaa kuch ThanDaa paanii hai, mujhee pyaas lagii hai.  
kyaa paRhnee likhnee-kee kaam-kee liyee eek khaas jagah hai?  
phuul paidaa karnee-kee alaawaa aap-koo kin ciizōō-kaa ṣauk hai.  
phir kab baatēē hōōgii.

## Review Conversations

### doost-kee saath

1. A: aadaa arz saahab, kyaa haal hai.  
B: sab aap-kii duaa hai. kahāā-see tašriif laaee hāī?  
A: aisee hii soocaa, zaraa aap-see mulaakaat kar lūū. bahut din hoo gae thee aap-see milee.  
B: yah too baRii khusii-kii baat hai.  
A: kal aap kahīī baahar gae thee kyaa?  
B: nahīī too, bas thooRii deer-kee liyee baazaar gayaa thaa.
2. A: aaiyee saahab, tašriif rakhiyee.  
B: Šukriyaa, aap-kaa too pataa hii nahīī caltaa.  
A: pahlee yah bataaiyee, ki aap-kee liyee caay banwaaūū yaa Šarbat.  
B: kyōō takalluf kartee hāī?  
A: is-mēē takalluf-kii kooi baat nahīī hai.  
B: acchaa, agar nahīī maanēēgee, too thooRaa Šarbat pii lūūgaa.
3. A: aaiyee saahab, aap-koo apnaa makaan dikhaa dūū.  
B: aap-koo parešaanii hoogii.  
A: nahīī too. deekhiyee, yah meerii baiThak hai.  
B: too kyaa aap takht-par baiThaa kartee hāī?  
A: wahii hamaarii aadat hai. kursii kam istamaal kartee hāī.  
is koonee-mēē meeree paRhnee-kaa kamraa hai.  
B: aur namaaz kidhar paRhii jaatii hai.  
A: udhar duusree koonee-mēē namaaz paRhnee-kii jagah hai.
4. A: kahiye, aap loogōō-kaa soonee-kaa kamraa kahāā hai.  
B: udhar hai, wah baRaa-waalaa kamraa.  
A: kyaa aap hamešaa kamrōō-mēē sootee hāī?  
B: nahīī, sirf jaaRee-mēē bhiitar sootee hāī.  
A: garmiyōō-mēē kahāā sootee hāī.  
B: garmiyōō-mēē baahar sootee hāī, aur barsaat-mēē macchardaanii lagaa-kar baraamdee-mēē sootee hāī.

5. A: aadaab arz khaan saahab, sab kuṣal too hai.  
 B: aaiyee singh jii. andar taṣriif laaiyee. sab aap-kii duaa hai.  
 A: aap too akeele jaan paṛtee hāī. aur kooii nahī hai, ghar-mē.  
 B: nahī, salmaa too kaali-j-mē paṛhtii hai. aur meerii biiwii eek bahan-kii ṣaadii-mē gaii hai.  
 A: too wah kab waapas aaegii.  
 B: salmaa too kal aanee-walii hai. us-kii chuṭṭii hoogii.
6. A: kahiye ṣarmaa jii, baṛee sundar phuul liyee hāī.  
 B: yee too meeree mitr guptaa jii-kee baag-kee hāī.  
 A: yee too baahar-see māgaee huee jaan paṛtee hāī.  
 B: nahī, un-kee baag-mē too bahut kism-kee phuul paidaa hoote hai.  
 A: kyaa unhē phuulōō-kaa ṣauk zyaadaa hai?  
 B: hā, bas kuch aisaa hii hai.

idhar udhar-kii baat-ciit

7. A: aap hindustaan kis liyee aae hāī.  
 B: hindii siikhnee-kee liyee aayaa hū.  
 A: too kyaa aap meerii hindii samajh leete hāī.  
 B: awaṣy samajh leetaa hū.  
 A: aap too bahut ṣuddh hindii booltee hāī. aap-nee hindii siikhni kahā ṣurua kii.  
 B: amriikaa-mē hii ṣurua kii, leekin yahā raṭee raṭee aur bhii siikh rahaa hū.
8. A: aaiyee smith saahab, inhī loogōō-kee paas baiṭhaa jaae.  
 B: bahut acchaa, jagah hoo, too baiṭh jaaē.  
 A: kyaa yee loog rooz hii aayaa jaayaa kartee hāī?  
 B: hā, un-koo nadii paar-see saamaan laanaa hootaa hai.  
 A: sṭiimar-see samay too bahut zyaadaa lagtaa hoogaa.  
 B: leekin har rooz aanee jaanee-kii aadat paṛ gaii hoogii.
9. A: kyaa aap ilaahaabaad-kee rahnee-waalee hāī?  
 B: jii nahī, māi gangaa paar-kaa rahnee-waalaa hū.  
 A: too ilaahaabaad kyō aae.  
 B: sarkaarii daftar-mē kaam hai.  
 A: agar aap-kee yahā daftar ban jaae, too baṛaa aaraam mileegaa.  
 B: hā, ṣaayad aglii pāne warṣiiy yojnaa-mē ban jaae.

10. A: kyaa loog yahāā aam taur-par takht-par baiThaa kartee hāī?  
 B: puraanee taariikee-kee loog too takht-par hii baiThtee hāī. ham-nee too kursii isteemaal karnaa šurūu kiyaa.  
 A: kyaa takht-par baiThnee-mēē kooii takliif nahīī hootii?  
 B: nahīī too, is-par darii aur caadar lagaatee hāī.  
 A: darii kyaa ciiz hootii hai.  
 B: darii eek kism-kaa kapRaa hai, jis-koo takht yaa khaaT-par bichaatee hāī.
11. A: agar aap-kii kooii kursii meez TuuT jaaee, too aap kyaa karēē.  
 B: kisii mazduur-koo bulaa lūū.  
 A: too agar mazduur na milee, too kyaa karēēgee.  
 B: agar kooii nahīī milee, Thiik karnee-kee liyee, too māī khud Thiik kar lūūgaa.  
 A: too aap-kee paas auzaar bhii hāī.  
 B: māī-nee too har kism-kee auzaar jamāa kiyee hāī.
12. A: yahāā-kaa mausam aam taur-par kaisaa rahtaa hai.  
 B: garmiyōō-mēē too garmii lagtii hai, aur jaaRee-mēē bahut ThanDii hawaa caltii hai.  
 A: barsaat-mēē kaisaa rahtaa hai.  
 B: barsaat-mēē too har eek jagah macchar hootee hāī.  
 A: too aap-koo barsaat-mēē andar soonee-kii zaruurat hootii hoogii.  
 B: nahīī, macchardaanii lagaa-kar baahar sootee hāī.

Unit IX Part A

Conversation

1 puraanee paricitōō-see bhēēT.

2 sahaaranpur zilee-kee eek gāāw-mēē.

---

3 paal: namaskaar Thaakur saahab. pahcaanaa nahīī, kyaa?

4 Thaakur saahab: namaskaar paal saahab. pahcaanaa kyōō nahīī.

5 aap too jaisee ham loogōō-koo bhuul hii gae.

6 paal: aur kyaa khabar hai. phasal kaisii rahii.

7 Thaakur saahab: maamuulii phasal hai. kheetii-kaa kaam too waisee hii cal rahaa hai.

---

8 paal: yah kuāā pahlee too nahīī thaa. ab too gāāw-kaa naḡḡaa hii badlaa huaa dikhaaii paR rahaa hai.

9 amar singh: hāā, thooRaa bahut pariwartan too zaruur hoo gayaa hai.

10 yah ham-nee jaanwarōō-kee liyee nayaa gheer banwaayaa hai.

11 paal: wah kis tarah-kii maḡiīn hai. us-see kyaa kaam bootaa hai.

12 amar singh: aaiyee, deekhiyee, yah caaraa kaaTnee-kii maḡiīn hai, gaayōō, bailōō aur bhāīśōō-kee liyee.

13 paal: wahāā too kii doost ikaTthee baiThee hāī. zaraa un loogōō-see mil lūū.

---

14 mootii cand: namastee paal jii. ham loogōō-kii yaad eek dam bhuul hii gae?

15 paal: yah kaisee sambhaw hoo saktaa hai. deekhiyee, na? mauḡaa miltee hii darḡan karnee aa gayaa.

16 mootii cand: baiThiyeegaa thooRii deer, yaa gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaaiyeegaa?

17 paal: nahīī, samay bahut kam hai. zaraa gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaa lūū, jis-see aurōō-see bhii bhēēT hoo jaace.

---

- 18 biir singh: paal saahab namastee. baRee acchee mauḱee-par aae.
- 19 paal: namastee, kaḱiyee, sab raazii ḱhuṢii hai na?
- 20 biir singh: hãã, aaj bahan-kii Ṣaadii hai. aap-kii bhii daawat hai.
- 21 paal: yah too meeraa saubhaagy hai.
- 

- 22 kyaa Ṣaadii-mẽẽ aap-kee yahãã gããw-bhar-koo daawat dii jaatii hai?
- 23 biir singh: Ṣaadii-mẽẽ too hameeṢaa saarii biraadrii-koo daawat dii jaatii hai.
- 24 un-kee saath naukar bhii aatee hãĩ.
- 25 paal: bahut acchii puuriyãã hãĩ. namaaree yahãã too puuriyãã bantĩi hii mahĩĩ.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

P: paal  
T: Thaakur saahab  
A: amar singh  
M: mootii cand  
B: biir singh

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | paricit  | acquainted (adj), acquaintance (m)   |
|      | bhẽẽT  | visit (f)  |
| 1    | <u>ṛuraanee paricitõõ-see bhẽẽT.</u>   | <u>Seeing old acquaintances.</u>   |
|      | zilaa  | district   |
| 2    | <u>sahaaranpur zilee-kee eek</u><br><u>gããw-mẽẽ.</u>   | <u>A village in Saharanpur District.</u>                                   |
|      | Thaakur  | chief (honorific) (m)  |
|      | pahcaannaa   | to recognize   |
| 3 P: | <u>namaskaar, Thaakur saahab.</u><br><u>pahcaanaa nahĩĩ, kyaa?</u>                               | <u>Namaskar Thakur sahab; don't you</u><br><u>recognize me?</u>            |
|      | paal   | Paul   |
| 4 T: | <u>namaskaar paal saahab.</u><br><u>pahcaanaa kyõõ nahĩĩ.</u>                                    | <u>Namaskar Mr. Paul, why shouldn't</u><br><u>I recognize you?</u>         |
|      | jaisee   | as if  |
|      | bhuulnaa   | to forget  |
|      | bhuul jaanaa   | to forget completely   |
| 5 T: | <u>aap too jaisee ham loogõõ-koo</u><br><u>bhuul hii gae.</u>                                    | <u>We thought you'd completely</u><br><u>forgotten us all.</u>             |
|      | ḵhabar   | news (f)   |
|      | phasal   | crops, harvest (f)   |
| 6 P: | <u>aur kyaa ḵhabar hai. phasal</u><br><u>kaisii rahii.</u>                                       | <u>How are things? How is the harvest?</u>                                 |
|      | maamuulii  | ordinary, so-so (adj)  |
|      | kheetii  | agriculture  |
| 7 T: | <u>maamuulii phasal hai. kheetii-</u><br><u>kaa kaam too waisee hii cal</u><br><u>rahaa hai.</u> | <u>The harvest is so-so. The farm</u><br><u>work is going on as usual.</u> |



	kuãã	well (m)
	naḱṣaa	pattern, map
	badlaa huaa	changed (adj)
	dikhaaaii	appearance
	dikhaaaii paRnaa	to look, seem
8 P:	<u>yah kuãã pahlee too nahĩĩ thaa.</u> <u>ab too gããw-kaa naḱṣaa hii</u> <u>badlaa huaa dikhaaaii paR</u> <u>rahaa hai.</u>	<u>This well wasn't there before.</u> <u>Lots of things look changed in</u> <u>the village now.</u>
	pariwartan	change (m)
	thooRaa bahut	quite a bit
9 A:	<u>hãã, thooRaa bahut pariwartan</u> <u>too zaruur hoo gayaa hai.</u>	<u>Yes, there certainly has been quite</u> <u>a bit of change.</u>
	jaanwar	animal (m)
	gheer	cattle corral (m)
10 A:	<u>yah ham-nee jaanwarõõ-kee liyee</u> <u>nayaa gheer banwaayaa hai.</u>	<u>Here we have a new corral built</u> <u>for the animals.</u>
	maṣiin	machine (f)
11 P:	<u>wah kis tarah-kii maṣiin hai?</u> <u>us-see kyaa kaam hootaa hai.</u>	<u>What type of machine is that?</u> <u>What is it used for?</u>
	caaraa	fodder
	kaaTnaa	to cut
	gaay	cow (f)
	bail	ox (m)
	bhãĩs	buffalo (f)
12 A:	<u>aaiyee, deekhiyee, yah caaraa</u> <u>kaaTnee-kii maṣiin hai,</u> <u>gaayõõ, bailõõ aur bhãĩsõõ-</u> <u>kee liyee.</u>	<u>Come here and look, this is a</u> <u>machine for cutting fodder for</u> <u>the cows, oxen and buffaloes.</u>
	ikaTThaa	together (adj)
13 P:	<u>wahãã too kii doost ikaTThee</u> <u>baiThee hãĩ. zaraa un loogõõ-</u> <u>see mil lũũ.</u>	<u>Some of my old friends are sitting</u> <u>together over there; let me go</u> <u>over for a bit and say hello.</u>
	dam	breath (m)
	eek dam	all at once, entirely
	yaad	memory (f)
14 M:	<u>namastee paal jii. ham loogõõ-</u> <u>kii yaad eek dam bhuul hii</u> <u>gaee?</u>	<u>Namaste Mr. Paul. Have you</u> <u>forgotten us completely?</u>

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| sambhaw   | possible (adj)  |
| maukaa miltee   | upon receiving an opportunity   |
| darśan  | sight, vision (m)   |
| darśan karnaa   | to see, visit   |
| 15 P: <u>yah kaisee sambhaw hoo saktaa hai. deekhiyee, na? maukaa miltee hii darśan karnee aa gayaa.</u>          | <u>I couldn't possibly. Don't you see, I came to see you as soon as I got a chance.</u>                           |
| cakkar  | circle (m)  |
| cakkar lagaanaa   | to walk around  |
| cakkar lagaaiyeegaa   | won't you walk around   |
| 16 M: <u>baiThiyeegaa thooRii deer, yaa gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaaiyeegaa?</u>   | <u>Will you sit for a while, or will you walk around the village?</u>   |
| jis-see   | so that   |
| aurōō-see   | with the others   |
| 17 P: <u>nahīī, samay bahut kam hai. zaraa gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaa lūū, jis-see aurōō-see bhīī bhēēT hoo jaaee.</u> | <u>No, I don't have much time; let me take a walk around the village so that I can meet the other people too.</u> |
| acchee mauķee-par   | at a good time  |
| 18 B: <u>paal saahab namastee. baRee acchee mauķee-par aaee.</u>  | <u>Mr. Paul, namaste, you turned up at a good time.</u>   |
| raazii kḥuṣīī   | well being  |
| 19 P: <u>namastee, kahiye, sab raazii kḥuṣīī hai na?</u>  | <u>Namaste, is everyone all right?</u>  |
| daawat  | feast (f)   |
| aap-kii daawat hai  | you are invited for a meal  |
| 20 B: <u>hāā, aaj bahan-kii ṣaadīī hai. aap-kii bhīī daawat hai.</u>  | <u>Yes, my sister is getting married today. You are invited to the feast also.</u>                                |
| bhaagy  | fortune, fate (m)   |
| saubhaagy   | good luck, good fortune (m)   |
| 21 P: <u>yah too meeraa saubhaagy hai.</u>  | <u>I am honored to be asked.</u>  |
| -bhar   | whole (part)  |
| gāāw-bhar   | whole village   |
| 22 B: <u>kyaa ṣaadīī-mēē aap-kee yahāā gāāw-bhar-koo daawat dii jaatīī hai?</u>                                   | <u>Do you invite all the villagers when you have a wedding?</u>   |

biraadrii

23 B: Šaadii-měě too hameešaa saarii  
biraadrii-koo daawat dii  
jaatii hai.

naukar

24 E: un-kee saath naukar bhii aatee  
hāī.

puurii

25 P: bahut acchii puuriyāā hāī.  
hamaaree yahāā too puuriyāā  
bantīī hii nahīī.

relatives and/or neighbors  
(in the village) (f)

The whole "biraadrii" is always  
invited to a wedding.

servant (m)

Their servants come with them too.

fried flat bread

The puris are very good. We don't  
make puris in our country.

## Cultural Notes

Most Indians live in villages like the one shown in this lesson. Although settlement patterns vary from region to region in India, the most common type of North Indian village is that shown here: a clump of houses standing close together in a "nuclear settlement" surrounded by the village fields. It is probably in her villages that India will appear most unfamiliar to the Western visitor, and for this reason it is important not to confuse the unfamiliar in village India with a refusal to accept change. For India's villages are experiencing great change, though this may not be immediately visible to the visitor's eyes. We have already mentioned the Community Development programs which are part of the Five Year Plans, the construction of brick houses, and the paving of village streets.

Villagers symbolize this trend with the very commonly used terms kaccaa and pakkaa. The first, kaccaa, carries the implication of impermanence and is used to describe adobe houses, unpaved roads, and local, non-standardized weights and measures, as well as raw food or unripe fruit. Its opposite, pakkaa, refers to more permanent structures, such as brick-and-mortar dwellings and wells and paved roads, to standardized weights and measures, and to cooked or otherwise processed food and ripe fruit.

In this unit we see the effects of change in the fodder-cutting machine, for instance. This simple machine, operated by a hand-turned crank, allows the owner to cut fodder for farm animals in a few hours which formerly a servant laboriously cut by hand with a knife in an almost full-time job. One of the consequences of the introduction of labor-saving machinery, however, has been to reduce the need for hired labor. Where formerly leisure was considered a sign of prosperity and high social status, landowners now tend to operate the new machinery themselves. The result is a tendency to increase India's "surplus agricultural labor." The industries fostered under the Five Year Plans are designed to absorb at least part of the population thus freed from unskilled manual labor. Other signs of change may be seen in the appearance of new pakkaa neighborhood wells which ease the problem of obtaining water in this dry area.

Ceremonies play an important part in village life as a relief from the round of agricultural activities. Festivals and weddings constitute a welcome break in routine. Most weddings in this area take place within about one month after the spring harvest and before the summer planting, and several may be going on in the village at the same time. They are usually the outcome of up to several years of negotiation between the families concerned through the help of intermediaries. The ceremonies, lasting three days, commence with the arrival of the groom's party in the village of the bride. The groom's party includes his parents and relatives and others from his village and may often number fifty or sixty strong. The marriage rituals are accompanied by much feasting, with at least one feast for the members of the bride's village, such as that shown in this lesson. The guests sit on the floor and are served on palm leaves by the host and members of his family. The feast begins with a sweet, after which a second course of vegetable curry, daal, puris and dahii is served. The meal ends with a serving of rice eaten with more dahii. Meat is not served. When the rituals are completed, the groom's party departs with the bride for its own village; the bride's family and friends accompany the groom's party for some distance to see them off.

One of the residents of the village is greeted in this lesson as Thaakur saahab. This is an honorific appropriate to his position. He is a Rajput, a member of a landowning caste with a famous martial tradition and a long history in India. Like the Sikhs of the Punjab, many Rajputs use the "last" name Singh, but it is equally appropriate to address them with this honorific. Members of other castes in the village are often addressed by honorifics appropriate to their position also: thus a Brahman may be addressed as panDit jii, and a merchant as seeTh jii. Three residents of the village in this lesson are Rajputs: Thaakur saahab, amar singh, and biir singh. The other, mootii cand, is not.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

#### Hindi

bhẽẽT (f)

sambhaw

citt prasann

#### Urdu

mulaakaat (f)

mumkin

raazii khusii

visit, acquaintance

possible (adj)

in good spirits (Hindi)

in good health (Urdu)

### 2. Related words

kaaTnaa

to cut

kaTnaa

to be cut

kaTaanaa

to have something cut

kheet

field

kheetii

agriculture

kheetii karnaa

to farm

eek

one

ikaTThaa

together

### 3. Additional vocabulary related to agriculture

anaaj

grain (m)

goost

meat (m)

aaluu

potatoes (m)

Beginning with this unit there will be no more grammar drills. Classroom practice will concentrate on question and response and conversation drills.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

kin loogõõ-see bhẽẽT huii.  
kyaa paal saahab-nee pahlee bhii un loogõõ-see mulaakaat kii thii?  
gããw kaun-see zilee-mẽẽ hai.  
kyaa sahaaranpur dillii-see dakṣiN taraf hai?  
kyaa Thaakur saahab-nee paal saahab-koo pahcaanaa?  
kyaa paal-saahab gããw-kee loogõõ-koo bhuul gae?  
jin loogõõ-see bhẽẽT hoo rahii hai, wee kaisee loog hãĩ.  
paal saahab kahãã-kee rahnee-waalee hõõgee.  
kyaa Thaakur saahab-kee baal baccee hãĩ?  
Thaakur saahab hinduu hõõgee yaa musalmaan.

### Group 2

pahlee gããw-mẽẽ kyaa ciiz nahĩĩ thii.  
paal saahab-kaa gããw-kee baaree-mẽẽ kyaa khayaal hai.  
kuãã kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
jaanwarõõ-kee liyee loogõõ-nee kyaa banwaayaa hai.  
gheer-mẽẽ kaun-see jaanwar hãĩ.  
maṣiin kis kaam-kee liyee isteemal kii jaatii hai.  
gããw-kee jaanwar kyaa khaatee hãĩ.  
gããw-mẽẽ kyaa hoo gayaa thaa.  
phasal kaisii rahii.

### Group 3

kyaa paal saahab-kee doost alag alag baiThee thee?  
kyaa paal saahab gããw-kee loogõõ-koo yaad kartee thee?  
kyaa yah sambhaw hai, ki paal saahab sahaaranpur aaẽẽ aur gããw-kee loogõõ-see  
bhẽẽT na karẽẽ?  
paal saahab kin loogõõ-kaa darṣan karnee aae.  
paal saahab kyõõ nahĩĩ baiTh sakee.  
kyaa paal saahab-koo bahut samay thaa?  
paal saahab-koo kyaa karnaa thaa.  
un-koo kyõõ cakkar lagaanaa thaa.  
mauḱaa miltee hii paal saahab-nee kyaa kiyaa.  
kyaa gããw-kee loogõõ-nee paal saahab-koo baiThnee diyaa?

Group 4

paal saahab kis mauḳee-par aae.

kyaa gāāw-kee loog paal-kee aanee-see k̥huʃ thee?

kyaa gāāw-mēē sab raazii k̥hušii thii?

kis-kii šaadii hoo rahii thii.

kyaa šaadii k̥hušii-kii baat hai?

Šaadii-měẽ kis-kii daawat thii.

kyaa paal saahab šaadii-měẽ aa saktee hãĩ?

jab Thaakur saahab paal saahab-see daawat-mēẽ aanee-koo kahtee hãĩ, too  
paal kyaa jawaab deetee hãĩ.

paal saahab-kii daawat kis-nee kii.

kyaa paal saahab daawat-see khuś hāī?

Group 5

Šaadii-měě kaun kaun loog aae thee.

kin kin loogõõ-kii daawat thii.

biraadrii kis-koo kahtee hãĩ.

**biraadrii-kee alaawaa kaun loog šaadii-měẽ aase.**

loog daawat-mẽẽ kyaa khaatee hõõgee.

kyaa paal saahab kursii-par baiThee hãĩ?

naukar kyaa kaam kartee hāī.

kyaa Thaakur saahab-kee bahut bhaaii bahan hāĩ?

kyaa amriikaa-mēē puuriyāā bhii bantii hāī?

gāāw-kii Šaadii-mēē kitnee din lagtee hōōgee.

kyaa amriikaa-mẽẽ bhii itnee loog daawat-mẽẽ bulaaee jaatee hãĩ?



## Situational Response

### Thaakur saahab:

aap ham loogōō-koo too bhuul gae hōōgee.  
aap kahāā-see taśriif laaee hāī.  
aap kaisee aae, bas-see yaa Treēn-see.  
kyaa aap-kii Śaadii huii hai?  
aap-kee maataa pitaa jii sab Thiik hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii hamaaree jaisee gāāw hāī?  
kyaa samaacaar hai aap-kee yahāā?  
aap-kaa deēś hindustaan-see kitnii duur hai.  
aap-kee yahāā phasal kaisii rahii.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii kheetii hoo rahii hai?

### amar singh:

kyaa aap-nee hamaaraa kuāā deekhaa hai?  
gāāw-kaa naḡśaa aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii pakkee kuēē hāī?  
aap loog jaanwar kahāā rakhtee hāī.  
aap-kee yahāā jaanwar kyaa khaatee hāī.  
kyaa aap-koo bhāīs-kaa duudh pasand hai?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā caaraa bhii maśiin-see kaTaa jaataa hai?  
wee joo loog udhar ikaTThee hāī, kyaa aap un-koo jaantee hāī.  
kyaa gāāw aap-koo badlaa huua lagtaa hai?  
kyaa aap-kee deēś-mēē bhii bahut pariwartan hoo rahaa hai?

### mootii cand:

aap-nee ciTThii kyōō nahīī likhii.  
bahut dinōō-mēē aae, aap kahāā-see aa rahee hāī.  
kyaa aap baiThiyeegaa?  
aap-kii kyaa ḡhaatir karūū.  
kuch duudh piijiyeegaa, kyaa?  
kyaa gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaaiyeegaa?  
pahlee kyōō nahīī aae ham loogōō-see milnee.  
kyaa aap aurōō-see bhii milce hāī.  
aap-kee yahāā too sab raazii khuśii hāī na?  
aur kin kin loogōō-see miinaa hai.

biir singh:

aaj bahan-kii šaadii hai, kyaa aap bhii aa sakēēgee?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā šaadii-mēē bhii saarii biraadrii-koo daawat dii jaatii hai?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā naukari bhii hāī?  
aap loogōō-kii šaadiyōō-mēē kyaa khaatee hāī.  
aap-kii šaadiyōō-mēē kitnee din lagtee hāī.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā puurii bhii bantii hai?  
aap-koo hamaaraa hindustaanii khaanaa kaisaa lagaa.  
kyaa aur kooii doost hai, aap-kee saath?  
aap too raazii khušii hāī, na?  
aur kyaa seewaa karūū. kuch caay piyēēgee?

paal saahab:

hamēē pahcaanaa nahīī, kyaa?  
kyaa khabar hai aap-kee gāāw-kii.  
kyaa yah kuāā pakkaa hai?  
gāāw-mēē aur kyaa pariwartan hoo gae hāī.  
yah gheeṛ aap-nee kab banwaayaa.  
us mašīin-see kyaa kaam hootaa hai.  
aap-kee paas kitnee bail hāī.  
kyaa bhāīs duudh bhii deetii hai?  
yee joo loog udhar baiThee hāī, kyaa māī un-see bhii mil saktaa hūū?  
kyaa aap hamaaree saath gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaaieegaa?  
aaj kis-kii šaadii hoo rahii hai.  
daawat-mēē kitnee loog aae hāī.  
kyaa naukaroō-koo bhoojan diyaa jaa rahaa hai?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā lassii bhii bantii hai?

## Review Conversations

### gāāw-waalōō-see baat-ciit

1. A: ab too gāāw-kaa naḡṡaa hii badlaa huaa nazar aataa hai.  
B: hāā, pichlee tiin saalōō-mēē thooRee bahut pariwartan too awaṡy hoo gae hāī.  
A: ḡhaas taur-par kyaa kyaa pariwartan hoo gae hāī.  
B: deekhiyee, udhar too nayaa kuāā ban gayaa hai.  
A: too kyaa pahlee gāāw-mēē kuēē nahīī thee?  
B: kuēē too zaruur thee, leekin wee sab kaccee thee. ab pakkee ban gae hāī.
2. A: yah kis-kaa makaan hai.  
B: yah too makaan nahīī, yah Thaakur saahab-kaa gheer hai.  
A: yah gheer kis kaam-kee liyee hai.  
B: gheer-mēē too jaanwar rakhtee hāī.  
A: Thaakur-kee paas kaun kaun jaanwar hāī.  
B: bail hāī, kheetii-kee liyee, aur gaeē aur bhāīsēē duudh-kee liyee.
3. A: hamaaraa gāāw aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.  
B: bahut acchaa lagtaa hai. ab too bahut badlaa huaa dikhaaii deetaa hai.  
A: pahlee too saaree makaan kaccee thee. ab bahut see pakkee ban gae hāī.  
B: ham-nee sunaa, ki saṡkēē bhii pakkii bannee-waalii hāī.  
A: hāā, sarkaar-see madad milee, too aglii pāāc warṡiiy yoojnaa-mēē pakkii banwaeēge.  
B: phir too aur bhii taraḡkii hoo jaeegii.
4. A: kahiye, meeree yee saathii zaraa gāāw deekhnaa caahtee hāī. ijaazat hai?  
B: zaruur saahab, taṡriif laaiyee. kyaa deekhnaa hai, māī dikhaa dūūgaa.  
A: hamēē gāāw-kaa cakkar lagaanaa thaa.  
B: zaruur lagaaiyee. kheetii-waalee too bahut gariib hāī. aap jaisee loog too nahīī milēēge.  
A: ham-nee sunaa ki bahut taraḡkii hoo rahii hai aap-kee gāāw-mēē.  
B: hāā, pāāc warṡiiy yoojnaa-kii wajah-see too bahut-see pariwartan hoo gae hāī.

5. A: us mašiiin-see kyaa kaam hootaa hai.  
 B: yah caaraa kaaTnee-kii mašiiin hai.  
 A: aisii mašiiin pahlee too nahīī thii aap-kee gāāw-mēē.  
 B: nahīī, pahlee too caaraa haath-see kaaTnaa paRtaa thaa.  
 A: us-mēē bahut samay lagtaa rahaa hoogaa.  
 B: hāā, pahlee doo naukar caahiye thee, caaraa kaaTnee-kee liyee.  
 ab too ham khud kaaT leetee hāī.

puraanee paricitōō-see bhēēT

6. A: namastee saahab. ham loogōō-koo too eek dam bhuul hii gae.  
 B: nahīī, yah kaisee hoo saktaa hai. fursat miltee hii bhēēT karnee aa gayaa.  
 A: pichlee tiin waršōō-mēē aap-nee eek ciTThii bhii nahīī likhii.  
 B: hāā, galtii too meerii hai. aur bataaiyee kyaa samaacaar hai.  
 A: sab aap-kii duaa hai, aur aap? aap biimaar too nahīī thee.  
 B: nahīī, sab Thiik thaa.
7. A: caliyee, baRee acchee mauḳee-par aae hāī, jis-see sabhii loogōō-see  
 ikaTThee bhēēT hoo gaii.  
 B: yah too meeraa bhii saubhaagy thaa, ki sab loogōō-see mulaakaat hoo gaii.  
 A: kahiye aur kyaa samaacaar hai. ghar-par sab raazii khušii hai?  
 B: sab Thiik hii hai. aap-kee laRkee baahar calee gae, kyaa?  
 A: wah too aaj kal nahīī hai. wišwawidyaaalay-mēē paRh rahaa hai.  
 B: yah too baRii khušii-kii baat hai. wee kab lauTēēgee, chuTTiyōō-mēē.  
 A: aglee haftee-mēē lauTnee-waalaa hai.
8. A: aap-kee makaan-mēē too bahut sii ciizēē badlii huii dikhaaii deetii hāī.  
 B: aap-kee jaanee-kee baad too bahut see pariwartan huee.  
 A: kyaa aap-nee nayaa baag lagaayaa hai?  
 B: hāā. māī-nee baag lagaayaa, jis-see saal bhar sabzii milee.  
 A: aur yah kamraa bhii pahlee nahīī thaa.  
 B: isee pichlee saal banwaayaa.
9. A: yee rahee hamaaree doost paal saahab. aaiyee paal saahab, bahut  
 dinōō-see mulaakaat nahīī huii. aap too aatee hii nahīī hamaaree yahāā.  
 B: iraadaa too thaa, aanee-kaa, magar fursat nahīī milii.  
 A: garmiyōō-mēē too chuTTii thii. us-waḳt kyōō nahīī aae.  
 B: garmii-kee samay too safar karnee-mēē bahut takliif hootii hai. dhuup  
 bahut lagtii hai.  
 A: aap-koo apnaa safar saweeree jaldii šuruu karna caahiye.  
 B: phir mauḳaa milee, too zaruur aaūḡaa.

doostōō-kee paas daawat-mēē

10. A: bhoojan too baRaa acchaa hai. bahut dinōō-kee baad milaa hai.  
B: kyaa aap-kee yahāā hindustaanii khaanaa nahīī miltaa?  
A: kabhii kabhii hindustaanii doostōō-kee yahāā miltaa hai.  
B: eek aur puurii liijiye, aur sabzii bhii.  
A: yah sabzii kis ciiz-kii hai.  
B: aaluu-kii hai. aap-koo pasand hai?.
11. A: aaj too bahut loogōō-kii daawat hai.  
B: hāā, šaadii-mēē too saarii biraadrii-koo daawat dii jaatii hai.  
A: joo loog udhar koonee-mēē baiThee hāī, wee kaun hāī.  
B: wee naukār hāī. un-kii bhii daawat hai.  
A: šaadii-mēē bahut paisaa lagaayaa jaataa hoogaa.  
B: šaadii too bahut khušii-kii baat hai, aur phir rooz rooz nahīī hootii.
12. A: kahiye, daawat-mēē aap-koo kyaa milaa.  
B: pahlee too miThaaiyāā thīī, peeRee aur rasgulle.  
A: miThaaiyōō-see kyōō šurū kartee hāī.  
A: wahii too yahāā-kaa riwaaz hai. miThaaiyōō-kee baad, daal, aaluu-kii sabzii aur puurii milii aur us-kee saath raaytaa.  
B: raaytaa kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
A: dahii-mēē mircii, aaluu wagairah milaa-kar raaytaa banaatee hāī.  
B: acchaa, aur goošt nahīī milaa.  
A: goošt too gāāw-mēē kam khaatee hāī.

Unit IX Part B

Conversation

- 1 chuTTii-kaa eek din.  
2 nainiitaal pahaaR-par.
- 
- 3 ašook: aree bhaaii dayaa. mǎĩ tumhaaree paas hii aa rahaa thaa.  
4 dayaa: mǎĩ bhii tumhaaree hii-paas aanee-kii sooc rahaa thaa.  
5 ašook: caloo, meeree saath maal-tak caloo. wahǎǎ winood bhaaii-see milnaa hai.  
6 dayaa: raastee-měě deekhtee caltee hǎĩ, aaj kaun kheel lagaa hai.  
7 ašook: woo kyaa poosTar lagaa hai. wahii skuul maasTar ab-tak cal rahaa hai?  
8 dayaa: mǎĩ too izee karii baar deekh cukaa hũũ.
- 
- 9 ašook: ab too kaafii loog aanee lagee hǎĩ. yahǎǎ-kee aur maidaan-kee mausam-měě bahut farak hoogaa.  
10 dayaa: hǎǎ, yee maii-kaa mahiinaa cal rahaa hai. jaisee jaisee chuTTiyǎǎ hōōgii, loog pahaaRōō-par aatee jaaēēgee.  
11 ašook: woo rahĩĩ winood bhaaii-kii patnii, leekin woo k̥hud dikhaaii nahĩĩ deetee.  
12 dayaa: namastee bhaabhii jii, winood bhaaii nahĩĩ aa rahee hǎĩ kyaa?  
13 bhaabhii: aanee-waalee too thee, leekin ghar-see nikaltee samay un-kee kuch doost aa gae, is liyee ruk gae.  
14 ašook: acchaa, too kuch deer yahǎǎ ruk kar un-kaa intizaar kar leetee hǎĩ.
- 
- 15 bhaabhii: kyōō ašook jii, aaj subah kahĩĩ ghuumnee gae thee?  
16 ašook: saweeree dayaa-kee saath pahaaRōō-par sair karnee gayaa thaa.  
17 dayaa: caRhaaii too kaThin caRhni paarii, leekin wahǎǎ-see drišy bahut sundar thaa.  
18 ašook: wahǎǎ-see barfiilii cooTiyǎǎ bilkul saaf dikhaaii deetii thĩĩ.  
19 dayaa: aur nicee, jhiil-kee kinaaree kinaaree phailaa huua šahar baRaa hii sundar lag rahaa thaa.  
20 ab winood bhaaii too aanee-kee nahĩĩ, caliyee, un-kee binaa hii naaw-par sair kii jaaee.
-

- 21                   baccee-koo zaraa hooṣiyaarii-see baiThaaiyeegaa. jhiil yahāā  
                    bahut gahrīi aur khatarnaak hai.
- 22 bhaabhii:       loog is-mēē nahaanee nahīī aatee kyaa? un-koo Dar lagtaa hai?
- 23 aṣook:          aatee kyōō nahīī, leekin nahaanee-kee liyee udhar prabandh hai.
- 24 bhaabhii:       aap loogōō-koo kisii samay us mandir-mēē jaanaa caahiye.  
                    us-mēē muurtiyāā bahut sundar hāī.
- 25 dayaa:          kis mandir-mēē. woo joo maidaan-kee koonee-mēē hai?
- 26 bhaabhii:       hāā, wahīī hai. bahut deekhnee laayaḱ hai.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

A: ašook  
D: dayaa  
B: bhaabhi

- |      |   |   |
|------|---|---|
|      | chuTTii   | vacation, free time   |
| 1    | <u>chuTTii-kaa eek din.</u>   | <u>A day of vacation.</u>   |
|      | pahaaR  | mountain (m)  |
| 2    | <u>nainiitaal pahaaR-par.</u>   | <u>Nainital, in the mountains.</u>  |
|      | aree  | oh, hey (exclamation)   |
| 3 A: | <u>aree bhaaii dayaa. mǎĩ</u><br><u>tumhaaree paas hii aa</u><br><u>rahaa thaa.</u>                 | <u>Oh, Dayaa, I was just coming to</u><br><u>see you.</u>                           |
| 4 D: | <u>mǎĩ bhii tumhaaree hii-paas</u><br><u>aanee-kii sooc rahaa thaa.</u>                             | <u>I was thinking of coming to see</u><br><u>you too.</u>                           |
|      | maal  | mall, road (m)  |
|      | winood  | name  |
| 5 A: | <u>caloo, meeree saath maal-tak</u><br><u>caloo. wahǎǎ winood bhaaii-</u><br><u>see milnaa hai.</u> | <u>Come along with me to the mall,</u><br><u>I am supposed to meet Vinod there.</u> |
|      | kheel   | movie, play (m)   |
|      | deekhtee calnaa   | to look while walking   |
| 6 D: | <u>raastee-mǎĩ deekhtee caltee</u><br><u>hǎĩ, aaj kaun kheel lagaa</u><br><u>hai.</u>               | <u>On our way let's look to see</u><br><u>which movie is playing today.</u>         |
|      | wahii   | that very   |
|      | poosTar   | poster (m)  |
|      | skuul maasTar   | school master (m)   |
| 7 A: | <u>woo kyaa poosTar lagaa hai.</u><br><u>wahii skuul maasTar ab-tak</u><br><u>cal rahaa hai?</u>    | <u>Look at that poster there. Are</u><br><u>they still showing "School Master?"</u> |
|      | euknaa  | to finish   |
|      | deekh cukaa hūũ   | I have just seen  |
| 8 D: | <u>mǎĩ too isee kahi baar deekh</u><br><u>cukaa hūũ.</u>  | <u>I have already seen that several</u><br><u>times.</u>                            |



maidaan  
farak  
is-mēē aur us-mēē farak hai

field, plains (m)  
difference (m)  
there is difference between  
this and that

9 A: ab too kaafii loog aanee lagee  
hāī. yahāā-kee aur maidaan-  
kee mausam-mēē bahut farak  
hoogaa.

A lot of people have started to  
arrive here. There seems to be  
a lot of difference between the  
weather here and the weather  
in the plains.

aataa jaanaa

keep coming

10 D: hāā, yee maii-kaa mahiinaa cal  
rahaa hai. jaisee jaisee  
chuttiyāā hōōgii, loog  
pahaaRōō-par aatee jaaēēgee.

Yes, this is the month of May.  
As soon as the vacations begin  
many people will come to the  
mountains.

dikhaai deenaa

to appear

11 A: woo rahīī winood bhaai-kii  
patni, leekin woo khud  
dikhaai nahīī deetee.

There is Vinod's wife, but he  
isn't around.

bhaabhi

older brother's wife

12 D: namastee bhaabhi jii, winood  
bhaai nahīī aa rahee hāī  
kyaa?

Namaste, Bhabhi ji, isn't Vinod  
coming?

nikaltee samay

at the time of leaving

13 B: aanee-waalee too thee, leekin  
ghar-see nikaltee samay un-  
kee kuch doost aa gae, is  
liye ruk gae.

He was coming, but as he was  
about to leave the house some  
of his friends came and so he  
stayed behind.

14 A: acchaa, too kuch deer yahāā ruk  
kar un-kaa intizaar kar leetee  
hāī.

O.K., then we'll stay here for a  
while and wait for him.

subah

morning, in the morning (m)

15 B: kyōō aśook jii, aaj subah kahīī  
ghuumnee gae thee?

Did you go walking somewhere  
this morning Ashok ji?

16 A: saweeree dayaa-kee saath pahaaRōō-  
pa: sair karnee gayaa thaa.

I went for a walk in the mountains  
with Daya this morning.

caRhaaii

climbing, ascent

caRhnaa

to climb

drīśy

view (m).

17 D: caRhaaii too kaThin caRhni  
paRi, leekin wahōō-see  
drīśy bahut sundar thaa.

We had a hard climb, but the  
view from there was very  
beautiful.

	baraf	ice, snow (f)
	barfiilii	snowy
	cooTii	peak
18 A:	<u>wahãã-see barfiilii cooTiyãã</u> <u>bilkul saaf dikhaaii deetii</u> <u>thĩĩ.</u>	<u>We could see the snow peaks very</u> <u>clearly from there.</u>
	jhiil	lake (f)
	phailnaa	to be spread
	phailaa huaa	spread out (adj)
19 D:	<u>aur niicee, jhiil-kee kinaaree</u> <u>kinaaree phailaa huaa šahar</u> <u>baRaa hii sundar lag rahaa</u> <u>thaa.</u>	<u>And below, the city spread along</u> <u>the shore of the lake looked</u> <u>very beautiful.</u>
	aanee-kaa nahĩĩ	(he) is not coming
	sair kii jaaee	let's have a ride
20 D:	<u>ab winood bhaaii too aanee-kee</u> <u>nahĩĩ, caliyee, un-kee binaa</u> <u>hii naaw-par sair kii jaaee.</u>	<u>It seems that Vinod won't come now.</u> <u>Let's take a boat ride without him.</u>
	hoošiyaar	careful, clever (adj)
	hoošiyaarii	care, cleverness
	hoošiyaarii-see	carefully
	baiThaanaa	to seat
	gahraa	deep (adj)
	khatarNaak	dangerous (adj)
21 D:	<u>baccee-koo zaraa hoošiyaarii-</u> <u>see baiThaaiyeegaa. jhiil</u> <u>yahũũ bahut gahrii aur</u> <u>khatarNaak hai.</u>	<u>Be careful in seating the child;</u> <u>the lake is very deep and</u> <u>dangerous here.</u>
	Dar	fear (m)
22 B:	<u>loog is-mũũ nahaanee nahĩĩ</u> <u>aatee kyaa? un-koo Dar</u> <u>lagtaa hai?</u>	<u>Don't people come here to swim?</u> <u>Are they afraid?</u>
	aatee kyũũ nahĩĩ	why shouldn't they come
23 A:	<u>aatee kyũũ nahĩĩ, leekin nahaanee-</u> <u>kee liyee udhar prabandh hai.</u>	<u>Certainly they come, but the</u> <u>swimming facilities are over there.</u>
	kisii samay	sometime
24 B:	<u>aap loogũũ-koo kisii samay us</u> <u>mandir-mũũ jaanaa caahiye.</u> <u>us-mũũ muurtiyũũ bahut sundar</u> <u>hĩĩ.</u>	<u>You should go to that temple over</u> <u>there sometimes. It has some</u> <u>very beautiful statues.</u>
	koonaa	corner
25 D:	<u>kis mandir-mũũ. woo joo maidaan-</u> <u>kee koonce-mũũ hai?</u>	<u>Which temple, the one that is on</u> <u>the corner of the field?</u>
26 B:	<u>hãĩ, wahĩĩ hai. bahut deekhnee</u> <u>laayak hai.</u>	<u>Yes, that's it. It's well</u> <u>worth seeing.</u>

### Cultural Notes

In our visits to a Hindu and a Muslim home, we have referred to the various "styles of living" which exist in modern India. We have already observed some aspects of the styles of life of both the modern urban middle class and the villager. We now return to the life of the urban middle class in this unit, a vacation visit to a hill station, India's equivalent of Western resorts.

Indians from many parts of the plains gather at the hill stations during the worst of the hot season, just before the coming of the monsoon. In Nainital, whose bazaar we visited in an earlier lesson, they may stay in one of the many large resort hotels which dot the lake or in a rented bungalow. Among Nainital's attractions are walks in the surrounding hills; a short climb of an hour brings the vacationer to a vantage point affording a superb view of the Himalayan snow peaks, including Nanda Devi, India's highest mountain and one of the highest in the Himalayan range. Others play cricket or go swimming and boating on the lake. Women visitors wear their best saris for a Nainital constitutional, the afternoon stroll along the mall.

It is quite characteristic to find educated Indians in conversation in such situations using kinship terms to address their friends. The term bhaaii saahab denotes an older male friend, while bhaabhi refers to the wife of an older male friend. The term bhaaii is used for a person of one's own age.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
driśy (m)	nazaaraa (m)	view
antar (m)	faraḳ (m)	difference

### 2. Related words

ḵhatarnaak	dangerous	ḵhatraa	danger
hoośiyaar	careful	hoośiyaarii	care

3. cuknaa occurs primarily in compound verb constructions like deekh cukaa hūū "I have already (or just) seen." Such compounds may be formed with all verbs. Since cuknaa is a non -nee verb, cukaa compounds do not take -nee.

<u>ham khaa cukee hāī.</u>	We've just eaten.
<u>uśaa jii jaa cukii hāī.</u>	Usha has already (or just) gone.

4. woo aanee-kee nahīī. He is not coming.

Similar constructions may be found with other verbs. The ending of -kaa varies with the person referred to.

<u>dhoobii nahīī aanee-kaa.</u>	The dhobi is not coming.
<u>laRkii nahīī aanee-kii.</u>	The girl is not coming.

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

kyaa loogõõ-koo kaam karnaa paRtaa hai?  
nainiitaal kidhar hai.  
nainiitaal dakṣiN-mēẽ hai, yaa uttar-mēẽ?  
aṣook kyaa kar rahaa thaa.  
dayaa-kaa kyaa karnee-kaa iraadaa thaa.  
wee doonõõ doost kahãã jaanee-waalee thee.  
maal-tak kis-liyee jaa rahee thee.  
raastee-mēẽ kyaa karnaa thaa.  
kaun-saa kheel lagaa thaa.  
kyaa loog pahlee bhii kheel deekh cukee thee?

### Group 2

kyaa nainiitaal-mēẽ bahut garmii paRtii hai?  
jaisee jaisee chuṭṭiyãã hõõgii, loog kyaa karẽẽgee.  
farak kyaa hai.  
maal-par doost kin-see milee.  
kyaa winood bhii thee?  
bhaabhii jii kis-kii patnii hãĩ.  
loog kis samay nainiitaal jaayaa kartee hãĩ.  
winood kyõõ nahĩĩ aae.  
jab winood ghar-see nikalnee-waalee thee, too kyaa huua.

### Group 3

loog kis-kaa intizaar kar rahee thee.  
bhaabhii jii-nee aṣook-see kyaa sawaal puuchaa.  
saweeree aṣock kahãã gae thee.  
kyaa pahaaR bahut ũĩcee thee?  
uupar pahũenee-kee liyee kyaa karnaa paRaa.  
uupar-see driṣy kaisaa thaa.  
uupar-see kyaa eiz bazar aaii.  
kyaa aasmaan-mēẽ bahut baadal thee?  
pahaaR-kii cooṭiyõõ-par kyaa eiz dikhaaii paRii.  
niicee ṣahar kahãã phailaa huua thaa.

Group 4

kyaa winood aa gae?

kaun saahab nahī aanee-kee thee.

winood-kee binaa loog kyaa karnae gae.

jhiil-par kyōō hoošiyaar rakhnaa paRaa.

jhiil kyōō khataarnaak hai.

kyaa snaan karnae-kii manaahii hai?

nahaanee-kee liyee kahāā prabandh hai.

maidaan-kee koonee-mēē kaun saa makaan thaa.

mandir kyōō mašhuur thaa.

kyaa nainiitaal deekhnee laayak šahar hai?

## Situational Response

### asook:

kyōō bhaaii, tamaaśaa deekhnee calēē, kyaa?  
kyaa tum skuul maasTar deekh cukee hoo?  
skuul maasTar kaisaa kheel hai.  
loog nainiitaal kyōō aayaa kartee hāī.  
nainiitaal aur maidaan-mēē kyaa farak hai.  
kyaa tum-koo pahaaR-par caRhnee-mēē takliif huii.  
uupar-kaa driśy tumhēē kaisaa lagaa.  
kyaa tum-nee barfiilii cooTiyāā deekhii hāī?  
kyaa pahlee bhi itnee loog yahāā nainiitaal aae thee?  
kyaa tum-see bhaabhii jii-kii mulaakaat huii?

### dayaa:

tum kidhar jaa rahee thee.  
aaj kaun kheel lagaa hai, sinemaa-mēē.  
winood bhaaii kyōō nahīī aa rahee hāī.  
too loog winod-see milee wee kaun hāī.  
kyaa winod bhaaii bilkul aanee-kee nahīī?  
kyaa aap-nee kabhi barfiilii cooTiyāā deekhii hāī?  
jis din aap uupar gae thee, kyaa us din barfiilii cooTiyāā bhi dikhaaii paRīī?  
kyaa winod-kee binaa sair karēē?  
kyaa aap-koo Dar nahīī hai? jhiil too bahut gahrii hai.  
ham-nee sunaa ki jhiil-kee paas mandir hai. wah kidhar hai.

### bhaabhii:

kyaa ham winood jii-kaa kuch intizaar karēē?  
aap loog aaj saweeree kahāā gae thee.  
kyaa pahaaR aap-koo pasand aae?  
uupar-see kyaa ciiz dikhaaii dii.  
kyaa aap jhiil bhi deekh sakee?  
kyaa aap loog tamaaśaa deekh cukee hāī.  
kyaa aasmaan uupar saaf bhi thaa?  
kyaa loogōō-koo yahāā nahaanee-kaa Dar hai?  
nahaanee-kaa prabandh kahāā kiyaa gayaa hai.  
kyaa aap loog kal hamaaree saath mandir deekhnee jaaēēgee?

## Review Conversations

### maal-par

1. A: namastee bhaabhi jii. bhaai saahab-see milnaa thaa. kyaa wee aa rahee hāī.  
B: aanee-waalee too thee, leekin ghar-see nikaltee samay un-kee kooi rišteedaar aa gae.  
A: too phir ghar hii-par ruk gae hōōgee.  
B: jii hāī, meeraa khayaal hai, ki ab too nahī aanee-kee.  
A: too caliyee, un-kee binaa hii sair karēē.
2. A: kahoo, bhaai aae kyōō nahī? māī too tumhaaraa intizaar kar rahaa thaa.  
B: caacaa jii-nee bulaa liyaa. unhī-kee paas deer hoo gai.  
A: kyaa kooi khaas baat thii?  
B: hāī, choōTii bhaabhi biimaar hāī. unhī-kee liyee kuch saamaan laanaa hai.  
A: acchaa too caloo, māī bhii caltaa hūū. kidhar-see caloogee?  
B: sinemaa ghar-kii taraf-see calēēgee. udhar-see nazdiik paReegaa.
3. A: sunoo bhaai, sinemaa deekhoogee, kyaa?  
B: aaj too paisee nahī meeree paas. zaraa winood-kee paas calēē, un-kee kooi doost aae hāī.  
A: paisaa too māī dee saktaa hūū, meeree paas too hāī hii.  
B: kaun kheel lagaa hai.  
A: "tāāgee-waalii" lagaa hai.  
B: "tāāgee-waalii" too deekh cukaa hūū. caloo winood-see milnee calēē.  
A: acchii baat hai.
4. A: deekhoo bhaai, kitnee loog aae hāī maal-par. pataa nahī, ki yee kahāā-see aae hāī.  
B: aisaa lagtaa hai, ki maidaan-mēē garmii zyaadaa paR rahii hai.  
A: kyaa in loogōō-mēē-see kisii-koo jaantee hoo?  
B: wee rahee dayaa, wee bhii lakhnauu-kee hāī. un-kee saath kaun loog hāī.  
A: caloo, un-see mulaakaat karēē. phir too pataa lag jaaegaa.



5. A: kyõõ bhaaii dineeṣ, kahāā rah gae thee.  
 B: zaraa pahaaR-kii taraf caīaa gayaa thaa.  
 A: udhar too māī bhii gayaa thaa. leekin tum nahīī milee.  
 B: meeree kuch mitr aa gae, is liyee bahut deer tak na ruk sakaa.  
 A: nainiitaal-mēē too kaafii bhiiR hoonee lag gaii hai.  
 B: ab too yah pahaaRõõ-kaa mausam hii hai.

saRak-par

6. A: kahiye saahab, udhar kyaa poosTar lagaa hai.  
 B: is-mēē likhaa hai, ki biiRii piyoo.  
 A: biiRii-kaa matlab kyaa hai.  
 B: biiRii eek kism-kii sigreT hai.  
 A: biiRii aur sigreT-mēē kyaa farak hai.  
 B: farak yah hai, ki biiRii sastii hai aur sigreT mahāgii.
7. A: bhaaii saahab, kyaa samay hoogaa.  
 B: kooii pāāc bajnee-waalee hāī.  
 A: kyaa nainiitaal jaanee-kee liyee kooii bas mileegii.  
 B: yahāā-see Treen rooz caar bajee chuuTtii hai.  
 A: mujhee too aaj šaam-tak pahūcnaa thaa, kisii sajaan-see milnaa thaa.  
 B: bas-kaa aDDaa yahāā-see das miil duur hai. eek Taiksii bulaa-kar udhar jaaiyee, aur wahāā-see bas mileegii.
8. A: darwaazee-par kyaa poosTar lagaa hai.  
 B: is-mēē likhaa hai, ki andar jaanaa manaa hai.  
 A: Šaayad aaj band hoogaa. kyaa aap-koo pataa hai, ki yah kab khuleegaa.  
 ham-nee sunaa, ki yah bahut deekhnee laayak jagah hai.  
 B: kal saweeree too Šaayad khulaa hoogaa, mujhee Thiik pataa nahīī.  
 A: too pataa kahāā-see mileegaa.  
 B: deekhiyee, udhar koonee-mēē joo aadmii khaRee hāī, unhīī-see puuchiye.  
 wee pataa dēēgee.

chuTTii-mēē

9. A: bataaiyee, aaj subah kahīī ghuumnee gae thee.  
 B: hāā, saweeree pahaaRõõ-par sair karnee gayaa thaa.  
 A: caRhaaii too bahut kaThin huii hoogii, aap-koo kaisii lagii.  
 B: caRhaaii kaThin too thii, magar uupar-see drišy bahut sundar thaa.  
 A: kyaa aap-nee barfiilīi cooTiyāā bhii deekhīī?  
 B: hāā, nandaa deewii bilkul saaf dikhaaii deetii thii.

10. A: deekhiyee, jhiil-kee kinaaree šahar kitnaa sundar lagtaa hai.  
 B: pahaaR-kee uupar-see too drišy aur bhii acchaa lagtaa hai.  
 A: acchaa, too zaraa pahaaR-par calēē, aaj doo pahar-mēē.  
 B: doo pahar-mēē too dhuup kuch zyaadaa lageegii. caRhaaii bahut kaThin hai.  
 A: phir saweeree hii calnaa paReegaa.  
 B: saweeree hii calēē, us-wakt too aasmaan bhii saaf raheegaa.
11. A: aaiyee bhaabhi jii, naaw-mēē baiThiyee.  
 B: mujhee naaw-mēē jaanee-see kuch Dar hai. jhiil too bahut gahrii hai.  
 A: agar bac-kee calēē, too Dar-kii kooii zaruurat nahīī.  
 B: acchaa, magar hoošiyaarii-see caliyee.  
 A: deekhiyee, jhiil-kee kinaaree phailaa huua šahar kitnaa sundar lagtaa hai.  
 B: hāā, aur uupar barfiilii cooTiyāā bhii dikhaaii deetii hāī.
12. A: yahāā paanii bahut gahraa maaluum hootaa hai.  
 B: isii liyee too unhōō-nee nahaanaa manaa kiyaa hai.  
 A: kyaa jhiil-mēē nahaanee-kaa kooii intizaam nahīī hai?  
 B: nahīī too, udhar koonee-mēē grainD hooTal-kee paas nahaanee-kaa prabandh hai.  
 A: kyōō na eek baar udhar nahaanee calēē.  
 B: acchaa, doo pahar-mēē calēēgee, us wakt too dhuup bhii raheegii aur paanii bhii garam hoogaa.

Unit X Part A

Conversation

- 1 sapruu haaus-kii kaary widhi-see paricay.  
2 naii dillii, sapruu bhawan.
- 

- 3 sureendra: caliyee, darwaazaa too khulaa dikhaaii paRtaa hai.  
4 joonz: mujhee prabandhak-see milnaa hai. yaanii DirekTar-see. un-kaa daftar kidhar hai.  
5 risepshanist: eek minat Thairiyee, maa zaraa foon kar-kee pataa lagaa luu, ki wee haa yaa nahii.  
6 sureendra: bahut acchaa. ham tab-tak yahii khaRee haa.
- 

- 7 risepshanist: wee aap hii loogoo-kii pratiiksha kar rahee haa.  
8 sureendra jii, capraasii too nahii caahiye. aap-koo un-kee kaaryaalay-kaa raastaa too maaluum hii hai.  
9 prabandhak: aaiyee, aaiyee, sureendra jii. namaskaar. kyaa samaacar hai.  
10 sureendra: namastee, sab aap-kii dayaa hai. yee haa meeree mitr Srii joonz.  
11 prabandhak: aap-see mil-kar baRii khuShii huii. kahiye, kyaa seewaa karuu aap loogoo-kii?
- 

- 12 joonz: maa-nee sapruu haaus-kii baRii praasanaa sunii hai. yahaa kis prakaar-kee kaary hotee haa?  
13 prabandhak: sapruu haaus-kaa mukhy uddeesh hai, antarraasTriiy maamlao-par adhyayan karaanaa.  
14 is-kee atirikt aur bhii bahut-see saanskritik kaary-kram hotee rahtee haa.  
15 sureendra: haa, parsoo hindii-kawii pant jii-kii jayantii yahii manaaii gaii thii.
-

- 16 joonz: ab too hindii-mēē bahut saa nayāa saahity prakaaṣit hoonee lagaa  
hoogaa.
- 17 sureendra: kal aap-kii patnii meeree saath raaj kamal prakaaṣan gaii thīī.
- 18 joonz: unhōō-nee naee peepar baik upanyaasōō-koo bahut pasand kiyaa, wahāā.
- 19 prabandhak: leekin ab bhii ham loog angreezii-kaa kaafii prayoog kartee hāī.
- 20 yee meeree sahaayak ṣrii singh aap-koo pustakaalay dikhaa  
dēēgee.
- 

- 21 ṣrii singh: yah yahāā-kaa adhyayan-kakṣ, yaanii riiding room hai.
- 22 idhar pustakēē hāī, us taraf patrikaaēē, aur wahāā piichee-  
kii taraf samaacaar patr rakhee huee hāī.
- 23 joonz: yahāā kaafii sankhyaa-mēē loog parhnee aatee hāī.
- 24 ṣrii singh: yah jalpaan grih hai, kyōō na eek kap caay pii jaaye.
- 25 sureendra: acchaa, ab aagyāā diijiye, dhuup aur hawaa doonōō teeṣ hoo  
rahii hāī.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

S: sureendra  
J: joonz  
R: riseṣṣanist  
P: prabandhak  
SS: ṣrii singh

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| paricay   | acquaintance (m)  |
| sapruu haaus  | Sapru House (m)   |
| widhi   | process, manner (f)   |
| kaary   | work, profession (m)  |
| kaary widhi   | manner of work (f)  |
| 1 <u>sapruu haaus-kii kaary widhi-see paricay.</u>  | <u>Getting acquainted with the operation of Sapru House.</u>                            |
| bhawan  | building, hall (m)  |
| 2 <u>naii dillii, sapruu bhawan.</u>  | <u>New Delhi, Sapru House.</u>  |
| 3 S: <u>caliyee, darwaazaa too khulaa dikhaaii paṛtaa hai.</u>                                  | <u>Let's go in, the door seems to be open.</u>  |
| prabandh  | management, control (m)   |
| prabandhak  | person in charge (m)  |
| yaanii  | this is, I mean to say  |
| DirekTar  | director  |
| 4 J: <u>mujhee prabandhak-see milnaa hai. yaanii DirekTar-see. un-kaa daftar kidhar hai.</u>    | <u>I'd like to meet the person in charge, I mean the director. Where is his office?</u> |
| ki wee hāī  | whether he's there  |
| foon karnaa   | to telephone  |
| 5 R: <u>eeek minaaṭ Thairiyee, māī zaraa foon kar-kee pataa lagaa lūū, ki wee hāī yaa nahī.</u> | <u>Just a minute; let me call and find out whether he is there or not.</u>              |
| 6 S: <u>bahut acchaa, ham tab-tak yahī khaṛee hāī.</u>  | <u>Fine. In the meantime we'll stand here.</u>  |
| pratiikṣaa  | wait (f)  |
| pratiikṣaa karnaa   | to wait   |
| 7 R: <u>wee aap hii loogōō-kii pratiikṣaa kar rahee hāī.</u>                                    | <u>He is expecting you.</u>   |

- capraasii  
kaaryaalay
- 8.R: sureendra jii, capraasii too nahī cahiyeē. aap-koo un-kee kaaryaalay-kaa raastaa too maaluum hii hai.
- 9 P: aaiyee, aaiyee, sureendra jii. namaskaar. kyaa samaacaar hai.
- dayaa  
aap-kii dayaa hai  
joonz
- 10 S: namastee, sab aap-kii dayaa hai. yee hāī meeree mitr śrii joonz.
- seewaa
- 11 P: aap-see mil-kar baRii khuśii huii. kahiyeē, kyaa seewaa karūū aap loogōō-kii?
- praśansaa  
kis prakaar-kaa
- 12 J: māī-nee sapruu haaus-kii baRii praśansaa sunii hai. yahāā kis prakaar-kee kaary hootē hāī?
- mukhy  
uddeēśy  
antarraaśTriiy  
maamlāa  
adhyayan  
karaanaa
- 13 P: sapruu haaus-kaa mukhy uddeēśy hai, antarraaśTriiy maamlōō-par adhyayan karaanaa.
- kee atirikt  
saanskritik  
kaary-kram
- 14 P: is-kee atirikt aur bhii bahut-see saanskritik kaary-kram hootē rahtē hāī.

- office boy, chaprasi (m)  
office (m)
- Surendra, you won't need a chaprasi. You know the way to his office, don't you?
- Come in, come in, Surendra. Namaskar. How are things?
- kindness (f)  
it is due to your kindness  
Jones
- Namaste. Everything is just fine. This is my friend Mr. Jones.
- service (f)
- I'm very glad to meet you. Tell me what can I do for you?
- praise (f)  
what kind of
- I have heard many good things about Sapru House. What sort of work do you do here?
- main (adj)  
aim, purpose (m)  
international (adj)  
affair  
study, research (m)  
to get done
- The main aim of Sapru House is to sponsor the study of international affairs.
- in addition, besides (adv)  
cultural (adj)  
function, event (m)
- In addition, it also sponsors many other cultural programs.

	kawi	poet (m)
	pant	name
	jayantii	anniversary
	manaanaa	to celebrate
15 S:	<u>hãã, parsõõ hindii-kawi pant</u> <u>jii-kii javantii yahĩĩ</u> <u>manaaii gaii thii.</u>	<u>Yes, we celebrated the Hindi poet</u> <u>Pant's birthday here, the day</u> <u>before yesterday.</u>
	saahity	literature (m)
	prakaasit	published (adj)
	prakaasit hoona	to be published
16 J:	<u>ab too hindii-mẽẽ bahut saa</u> <u>nayaa saahity prakaasit</u> <u>hoonee lagaa hoogaa.</u>	<u>There must be a lot of new literature</u> <u>published in Hindi now.</u>
	raaj kamal	name
	prakaasan	publications (m)
17 S:	<u>kal aap-kii patnii meeree saath</u> <u>raaj kamal prakaasan gaii</u> <u>thii.</u>	<u>Yesterday your wife went with me</u> <u>to Raj Kamal Publications.</u>
	peepar baik	paper back
	upanyaas	novel (m)
18 J:	<u>unhõõ-nee naee peepar baik</u> <u>upanyaasõõ-koo bahut pasand</u> <u>kiyaa, wahãã.</u>	<u>She liked the new paper back novels</u> <u>there very much.</u>
	ab bhii	even now
	prayog	use (m)
	prayog karnaa	to use
19 P:	<u>leekin ab bhii ham loog</u> <u>angreezii-kaa kaafii</u> <u>prayog kartee hãĩ.</u>	<u>But nevertheless we still use quite</u> <u>a lot of English.</u>
	sahaaytaa	help (f)
	sahaayak	assistant (m)
	pustak	book (f)
	pustakaalay	library (m)
20 P:	<u>yah meeree sahaayak šrii singh</u> <u>aap-koo pustakaalay dikhaa</u> <u>dẽẽgee.</u>	<u>My assistant Mr. Singh will show</u> <u>you the library.</u>
	kakš	room (m)
	adhyayan-kakš	reading room (m)
	riiding room	reading room (m).
21 SS:	<u>yah yahãã-kaa adhyayan-kakš,</u> <u>yaanii riiding room hai.</u>	<u>This is our "adhyayan-kaksha," that</u> <u>is reading room.</u>

patrikaa

samaacaar patr

22 SS: idhar pustakēē hāī, us taraf  
patrikaaēē, aur wahāā  
piichee-kii taraf samaacaar  
patr rakhee huee hāī.

sankhyaa

23 J: yahāā kaafii sankhyaa-mēē loog  
paRhnee aatee hāī.

jalpaan

grih

kap

24 SS: yah jalpaan grih hai, kyōō na  
eeek kap caay pii jaaee.

25 S: acchaa, ab aagyāā diijiyee.  
dhuup aur hawaa doonōō teez  
hoo rahii hāī.

magazine (f)

newspaper (m)

Here are the books, on that side  
are the magazines, and back there  
are the newspapers.

number (f)

Quite a number of people come here  
to read.

snack (m)

house (m)

cup (m)

This is the snack bar, let's have  
a cup of tea.

O.K., and then we have to go;  
it's getting hot and windy.



### Cultural Notes

Sapru House is one of the many research institutes which have sprung up in larger Indian cities and which give evidence of India's cultural and intellectual life. These institutes provide research facilities for advanced students, libraries and reading rooms, and meeting places for discussion groups. They usually contain also an auditorium in which public functions and dramas can be held. Sapru House, in New Delhi, is named after Sir Tez Bahadur Sapru, a well-known lawyer and a founder of the Liberal Party which was active after the First World War and during the 1920's.

In this Unit we encounter our first mention of Hindi literature. Although the bulk of Hindi literature is recent in origin, very little of it having been produced before 1900, it is finding an increasing public in the Hindi-speaking area, especially among students. One characteristic of the Hindi-reading public is its interest in poetry. Poetry readings are sometimes attended by thousands; poets read or chant their own poetry before an appreciative crowd in sessions that sometimes last all night. Shown in this lesson is the anniversary celebration in honor of Sumitra Nandan Pant, a very well-known Hindi poet, consisting of a reading of his poetry. The attendance indicates the popularity of poetry in modern India.

One characteristic of Indian office life is the ubiquitous capraasii. He is a uniformed office boy who carries messages, give information to visitors, does filing, carries refreshments, and otherwise attends to the wants of the clerical personnel.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

#### Hindi

kaary (m)  
 pratiikṣaa (f)  
 karyaalay (m)  
 praṣansaa (f)  
 mukhy  
 prayoog (m)  
 sahaaytaa (f)  
 samaacaar patr (m)  
 grih (m) (formal)

#### Urdu

kaar (m)                      work, project  
 intizaar (m)                wait  
 daftar (m)                  office  
 taariif (f)                  praise  
 khaas                        chief (adj)  
 isteemaal (m)                use  
 madad (f)                    help  
 akhbaar (m)                newspaper  
 ghar (m)                    house

### 2. Related words

prabandh (m)	management
kawi (m)	poet
kaary (m)	work
pustak (f)	book
sanskrit	refined (adj)
sanskriti	culture (f)
saanskritik	cultural (adj)

prabandhak (m)	manager
kaawy (m)	poem
karyaalay (m)	office
pustakaalay (m)	library

### 3. Additional vocabulary

leekhak	writer
prakaashak	publisher
kahaanii	story

## Rapid Response

### Group 1

joonz saahab kis liyee sapruu haaus jaa rahee hãĩ.  
joonz-kee saath kaun sajjan hãĩ.  
kyaa darwaazaa band thaa?  
kyaa andar jaanee-kii ijaazat milii?  
DirekTar-koo hindii-mẽẽ kyaa kahtee hãĩ?  
kyaa capraasii bulaanee-kii zaruurat hai?  
kyaa joonz saahab jaantee.hãĩ, ki prabandhak-kaa daftar kahãã hai?  
kyaa joonz aur un-kee saathii siidhee DirekTar-kee paas jaatee hãĩ?  
riseþsanisT-koo kyõõ foon karnaa hai.  
jab-tak andar jaanee-kii ijaazat miltii hai, tab tak loog kahãã intizaar kartee hãĩ.

### Group 2

kyaa loogõõ-koo bahut samay intizaar karnaa paRaa?  
jab DirekTar taiyaar hai un-see milnee-kee liyee, too riseþsanisT kyaa kahtii hai.  
kyaa sureendra jii-koo prabandhak-kee kaaryaalay-kaa raastaa maalum hai?  
kyaa sureendra jii prabandhak-kee mitr hãĩ?  
kaaryaalay-kii urduu kyaa hai.  
prabandhak sureendra-see kyaa sawaal puuchtee hãĩ.  
kyaa joonz saahab prabandhak-kee mitr hãĩ?  
joonz saahab-see mil-kar prabandhak kyaa kahtee hãĩ.  
kyaa prabandhak-koo bahut kaam hai?

### Group 3

joonz saahab-nee sapruu haaus-kee baaree-mẽẽ kyaa sunaa hai.  
joonz saahab sapruu haaus-kee baaree-mẽẽ kyaa puuchtee hãĩ.  
sapruu haaus-kaa mukhy uddeesý kyaa hai.  
sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kin kin maamlõõ-par adhyayan'kiyaa jaataa hai.  
adhyayan-kee alaawaa sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kyaa kaary-kram hootee hãĩ.  
praþansaa-kii urduu kyaa hai.  
sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kis prakaar-kee kaary hootee hãĩ.  
sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kis kawi-kii jayantii manaaii gaii.  
sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kaisee saanskritik samaarooh hootee hãĩ.  
pant jii-kaa kyaa kaary hai.

#### Group 4

hindii-mēē kyaa prakaaṣit hoonee lagaa hai.  
kyaa hindii saahity bahut prasiddh hai?  
kyaa aap hindii saahity-kee eek kawi-koo jaantee hāī?  
kyaa joonz-kii patnii bhii bhaarat-mēē hāī?  
joonz-kii patnii sureendra-kee saath kahāā gaii hāī.  
ab hindii-kii kis prakaaṣit kii pustakēē prakaaṣit hoo rahii hāī.  
peepar baik-mēē kyaa prakaaṣit hoo rahaa hai.  
kyaa hindustaan-mēē ab bhii angreezii-kaa prayoog kiyaa jaataa hai?  
prabandhak-ke sahaayak-kaa kyaa naam hai.  
sahaayak kyaa kaam kartaa hai.

#### Group 5

riiding ruum-kii hindii kyaa hai.  
pustakaalay-mēē kyaa rakhaa jaataa hai.  
pustakōō-kee alaawaa pustakaalay-mēē kyaa rakhtee hāī.  
kyaa parhnee-waalōō-kii sankhyaa bahut hai?  
pustakaalay-mēē kin maamlōō-par adhyayan kiyaa jaataa hoogaa.  
kyaa pustakēē aur patrikaaēē eek hii jagah rakhii jaatii hāī?  
pustakaalay deekh-kar loog kyaa kartee hāī.  
jalpaan grih kyaa ciiz hai.  
loogōō-koo kyōō jaanaa thaa.  
jaatee waqt sureendra-nee kyaa kahaa.

## Situational Response

### prabandhak:

aap-koo kin kin ciizõõ-mẽẽ ruci hai.  
kyaa aap-kee yahãã antarraašTriiy maamlõõ-par adhyayan kiyaa jaataa hai?  
aap kis ciiz-par adhyayan kar rahee hãĩ.  
kyaa seewaa karũũ aap-kii.  
aap-nee sapruu haaus-kee baaree-mẽẽ kyaa sunaa hai.  
kyaa aap-koo hamaaraa hindii saahity paRhnee-kaa šauk hai?  
aap-kee yahãã loog kis bhaašaa-kaa prayoog kartee hãĩ.  
kyaa aap-kii patnii bhii hindustaan-mẽẽ hãĩ?  
kyaa aap-nee kawĩ pant jii-kii jayantii deekhii hai?  
kyaa aap-koo baahar bahut intizaar karnaa paRaa?

### sahaayak:

aap sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kyaa deekhẽẽgee.  
kyaa aap-koo antarraašTriiy maamlõõ-mẽẽ ruci hai?  
aap kahãã-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?  
aap sureendra jii-see kahãã milee.  
kyaa aap hamaaraa pustakaalay deekhẽẽgee?  
kyaa aap-kee yahãã bhii itnee loog pustakaalay-mẽẽ paRhnee aatee hãĩ?  
yah jalpaan grih hai. aap-kii kyaa seewaa karũũ.  
kyaa aap-koo kuch waqt hai, caay piinee-kee liyee?  
kyaa hamaarii hindustaanii patrikaaẽẽ aap-kee yahãã bhii miltii hãĩ?  
adhyayan kakš-kii angreezii kyaa hai.

### šri' joonz:

prabandhak-koo ham-see milnee-mẽẽ too pareešaanii nahĩĩ hoogii.  
kyaa bahut intizaar karnaa paReegaa?  
kyaa loog hamaarii pratiikšaa kar rahee hãĩ?  
aap-kii prabandhak-see kahãã mulaakaat huii.  
sapruu haaus-mẽẽ kis prakaar-kee kaary hootee hãĩ?  
antarraašTriiy maamlõõ-kee atirikt kin kin ciizõõ-par adhyayan kiyaa jaataa hai.  
yahãã kaun loog adhyayan karnee aatee hãĩ.  
kyaa aap-kee yahãã hindii bhaašaa-kee samaacaar patr bhii miltee hãĩ?  
kyaa bahut loog hindii bhaašaa-mẽẽ likhnaa paRhnaa šurua kar rahee hãĩ?  
aap-koo hindii patrikaaẽẽ pasand hãĩ?  
kyaa aap-kee saanskritik kaary-kram-mẽẽ angreezii bhaašaa bhii isteemaal kii jaatii hai?

## Review Conversations

### saRak-par

1. A: kyaa yah bas sapruu haaus jaatii hai?  
B: jaatii hai saahab. kitnee TikaT.  
A: doo deenaa bhaaii. sapruu haaus aatee hii hamẽẽ zaraa bataa deenaa.  
B: yah bas sapruu haaus-kee bilkul saamnee too nahĩĩ ruktii, par wahãã-see kaafii nazdiik hai.  
A: kyaa aap raastaa bataa saktee hãĩ?  
B: hãã, bas stainD-see jaa-kar siidhee haath calee jaaiyee. phir sapruu haaus bilkul saamnee nazar aaeegaa.
2. A: kahiye saahab, sapruu haaus yahãã-see kis taraf hoogaa.  
B: naam too nahĩĩ jaantaa. us-mẽẽ kyaa kaary hootaa hai.  
A: us-mẽẽ antarraašTriiy maamlõõ-par adhyayen kiya jaataa hai.  
B: acchaa, samajh gayaa. wah too yahãã-see nazdiik hii hai. siidhee jaaiyee, aglii saRak-tak. aur phir daahinii taraf.  
B: bahut dhanyawaad.
3. A: deekhiye, kitnee naee makaan banaaee jaa rahee hãĩ.  
B: us saamnee-waalee makaan-mẽẽ kyaa hoogaa.  
A: yah saahity akaademi-kee liyee hoogaa. is-mẽẽ bhaarat-kii sab bhaašaaõõ-par adhyayan kiya jaaeegaa.  
B: kyaa in bhaašaaõõ-mẽẽ ab bahut saahity prakaašit hoo rahaa hai?  
A: ab too bahut sii ciizẽẽ prakaašit hoo rahii hãĩ.
4. A: bataaiyee, mujhee hindii-kii kooii pustak deekhnii hai. kyaa yahãã-par hindii pustakõõ-kii dukaanẽẽ milẽẽgiĩ?  
B: yahãã naii dillii-mẽẽ too zyaadaatar angreezii-kii pustakẽẽ biktii hãĩ. puraani dillii-mẽẽ hindii-kii bahut sii pustakẽẽ milẽẽgii.  
A: too kyaa yahãã-kee loog hindii nahĩĩ paRhlee?  
B: pahlee too angreezii zyaadaa cal rahii thii, leekin ab hindii paRhii jaa rahii hai.

daftar-mēē

5. A: kahiyeē mujhee prabandhak-see milnaa hai. un-kaa daftar kahāā hai.  
B: thoorii deer udhar baiThiyeē. māī foon kar-kee pataa lagaa lūūgaa ki wee hāī yaa nahīī.  
A: kyaa bahut deer lageegii? unhōō-nee kahaa thaa, ki das bajee aanaa aur das too baj gaeē.  
B: wee aap-kaa intizaar kar rahee hāī. kyaa raastaa maaluum hai?  
A: nahīī too, māī pahlii baar aa rahaa hūū.  
B: ee capraasii, idhar aaoo, saahab-koo DirekTar saahab-kaa daftar dikhaa doo.
6. A: padhaariyeē, joonz saahab. māī aap hii-kii pratiikṣaa kar rahaa thaa.  
B: aap-koo pareeṣaanii too nahīī huii.  
A: nahīī, baiThiyeē too. māī kyaa seewaa kar saktaa hūū.  
B: māī zaraa aap-kee kaaryaalay-kii kaary widhi-see paricit hoonaa caahtaa thaa.  
A: awaṣy yah too prasanntaa-kii baat hai. eek capraasii aap-kee saath kar dūū.  
B: baRii kripaa aap-kii.
7. A: ham-nee aap-kee saapruu haaus-kii bahut taariif sunii hai. is-mēē kyaa hootaa hai.  
B: adhiktar too antarraaṣṭriiy maamlōō-par adhyayan kiyaa jaataa hai.  
A: kyaa is-kee alaawaa aur bhii kaary-kram hootee hāī.  
B: nāaTak aur duusree saanskritik kaary-kram bhii hootee rahtee hāī.  
A: too kyaa bahut loog aatee hāī, isee deekhnee-kee liyeē.  
B: ab too in samaaroohōō-mēē loog bahut ruci leeneē lageē hāī.
8. A: kahiyeē saahab, aap kis-liyeē yahāā taṣriif laaeē hāī.  
B: māī adhyayan karnee-kee liyeē yahāā aa rahaa hūū.  
A: aap-koo kin ciizōō-mēē ruci hai.  
B: antarraaṣṭriiy maamlōō-mēē aur hindii saahity-mēē bhii.  
A: phir too aap-koo hamaaree pustakaalay-see bahut sahaaytaa mileegii.  
B: too pustakaalay-mēē adhyayan karnee-kii ijaazat mil sakeegii?  
A: awaṣy mileegii.

pustakaalay-mēē

9. A: aisa lagtaa hai, ki yahāā kaafii sankhyaa-mēē loog adhyayan karnee aatee hāī.  
B: jii hāā, yahāā duniyāā-kee sabhii samaccaar patr māgaac- jaatee hāī.  
A: pustakōō-kii sankhyaa bhii too bahut maaluum hootii hai.  
B: hāā, kam-see kam antarraaṣṭriiy maamlōō-par too itanii kitaabēē aur kahīī nahīī hāī.  
A: kyaa yee pustakēē sab yahāā prakaaṣit huii hāī?  
B: nahīī, wee too saarii duniyāā-see māgaali jaatii hāī.

10. A: kyaa aap-kee paas pant jii-kii kooii pustak hai?  
 B: kaun pant jii. mǎĩ inhēē nahĩĩ jaantaa.  
 A: sumitraa nandan pant too hindii saahity-mēē bahut maṣhuur hǎĩ. un-kee bahut upanyaas prakaasit hōōgee.  
 B: nahĩĩ, wah too kawi hǎĩ. un-kee kaaĩ kaawy milēēgee pustakaalay-mēē. leekin kaawy paRhnee-mēē aap-koo too kaThinaaii hoogii. bahut muṣkii hindii hai.  
 A: kooṣis karūūgaa. kooii ciiz samajh-mēē na aaeegii, too kisii-see puuch lūūgaa.
11. A: kyaa aap-kee paas samaacaar patr bhii hǎĩ?  
 B: jii hǎǎ, udhar meez-par saarii duniyǎǎ-kee samaacaar patr rakhee hǎĩ.  
 A: kyaa amriikaa-kee bhii milēēgee?  
 B: awaṣy milēēgee. wee too rooz aatee rahtee hǎĩ.  
 A: mujhee nyuyaark Taaĩmz caahiye.  
 B: wah kal aayaa hai. udhar meez-par baiTh-kar paRh liijiye.
12. A: mujhee hindii-kaa eek upanyaas paRhnaa hai. hindii-kee kaun leekhak maṣhuur hǎĩ.  
 B: sab-see maṣhuur leekhak too preem cand hǎĩ. aap-nee un-kaa naam too sunaa hoogaa.  
 A: hǎǎ, naam too jaantaa hūū. un-kaa kaun saa upanyaas maṣhuur hai.  
 B: sab-see maṣhuur too goodaan hai. wah udhar mileegaa, koonee-mēē.  
 A: kyaa mǎĩ us-koo ghar lee jaa saktaa hūū?  
 B: nahĩĩ, sab kitaabēē yahĩĩ pustakaalay-mēē paRhniĩ hǎĩ. udhar kursii-par baiTh-kar paRh liijiye.



Unit X Part B

Conversation

1 graam seewak-kee saath.

2 graam wikaas yoojnaa-kee eek kṣeetr mēē.

---

3 wideeṣii: yah nahar too naii maalum hootii hai, pahlee aisi nahreē too nahīī thīī.

4 graam seewak: yah nahar nahīī hai, yah too Tyuub bel-kii naalii hai.

5 wideeṣii: Tyuub bel kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.

6 graam seewak: jahāā nahar nahīī hai, wahāā sarkaar-nee sīcaaii-kee liyee Tyuub bel laagaaee hāī.

7 wideeṣii: yah Tyuub bel kaisee caltaa hai.

8 aapareeTar: yahāā-see is-koo calaatē hāī. deekhiyee kaisee paanii baahar aa rahaa hai.

9 phir yah paanii naaliyōō-kee sahaaree kheetōō-tak pahūcaayaa jaataa hai.

---

10 graam seewak: deekhiyee, nahar yah hai.

11 wideeṣii: kyaa nahaanee-kii manaahii nahīī hai?

12 graam seewak: sab jagah too nahīī nahaa saktee, leekin ghaatōō-par nahaanee-kaa prabandh kiya gayaa hai.

13 yah sīcaaii-kaa puraanaa tariikaa hai. isee rahaT kahtee hāī.

---

14 wideeṣii: kyaa yah skuul sarkarii hai?

15 graam seewak: jii nahīī, isee yahāā-kii jantaa-nee khoolaa hai. sarkaar-see bhi sahaaytaa miltii hai.

16 wideeṣii: mujhee pataa nahīī thaa, ki gāwōō-mēē śikṣaa-kee liyee itnii ruci hai.

17 graam seewak: ab too kaafii ruci paidar hoo gali hai. yahāā sabhi wiṣayōō-kee parhaanee-kaa prabandh kiya gayaa hai.

---

18 wideešii: kyaa kyaa paRhaayaa jaataa hai?

19 graam seewak: is skuul-měě krišī-sambandhii paRhaaii-par zyaadaa bal  
diyaa jaataa hai. is-kee alaawaa sanskrit, hindii,  
angreezii, tathaa saayans bhii paRhaaii jaatii hāī.

---

20 wideešii: abhii tak kheetii-kee tariikōō-měě kitnaa pariwartan aa sakaa hai.

21 graam seewak: kaafii aa gayaa hai. ab lakRii-kee halōō-kii jagah loohee-  
kee halōō-kaa prayoog hoonee lagaa hai.

22 caliyee, aap-koo pancaayat bhawan bhii dikhaaēē jis-měě  
graam sabhaa-kii baiThkēē hootii hāī.

23 wideešii: yah too bahut sajaa hai. yee citr kin loogōō-kee hāī?

24 graam seewak: yah hamaaree pradhaan mantrii-kaa citr hai, aur wah  
raašTrpati-kaa.

25 wideešii: aap-nee too bilkul aadhunik Dhang-kaṛ prabandh kar diyaa hai.

26 graam seewak: hāā, in bartanōō-měě zaraa aasaanii rahtii hai, aur yee  
sundar bhii lagtee hāī.

# Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

W: wideešii  
G: graam seewak  
A: aapareeTar

- |      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
|      | seewak   | servant, worker (m)  |
|      | graam seewak   | village level worker (m)   |
| 1    | <u>graam seewak-kee saath.</u>   | <u>With the village level worker.</u>  |
|      | graam  | village (m)  |
|      | wikaas   | development (m)  |
|      | kšeetr   | area, region (m)   |
| 2    | <u>graam wikaas yoojnaa-kee eek kšeetr-mēē.</u>  | <u>In a village development block.</u>   |
|      | nahar  | canal (f)  |
| 3 W: | <u>yah nahar too naii maaluum hootii hai, pahlee aisii nahrēē too nahīī thīī.</u>          | <u>This canal seems to be new; formerly there weren't any such canals.</u>         |
|      | Tyuub bel  | mechanically pumped deep well (m)  |
|      | naalii   | drain, ditch   |
| 4 G: | <u>yah nahar nahīī hai, yah too Tyuub bel-kii naalii hai.</u>                              | <u>It isn't a canal, it's just a tube well irrigation ditch.</u>                   |
| 5 W: | <u>Tyuub bel kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.</u>   | <u>What is a tube well?</u>  |
|      | jahāā  | which place (adv)  |
|      | jahāā....wahāā   | where(ever)....there   |
|      | lagaanaa   | to install   |
|      | sīcaaii  | irrigation   |
| 6 G: | <u>jahāā nahar nahīī hai, wahāā sarkaar-nee sīcaaii-kee liyee Tyuub bel laagaaree hāī.</u> | <u>Where there is no canal the government has built tube wells for irrigation.</u> |
|      | calnaa   | to be operated   |
| 7 W: | <u>yah Tyuub bel kaisee caltaa hai.</u>  | <u>How does the tube well work?</u>  |
|      | calaanaa   | to operate, drive  |
| 8 A: | <u>yahāā-see is-koo calaatee hāī. deekhiyee kaisee paanii baahar aa rahaa hai.</u>         | <u>We operate it from here. Notice the water coming out.</u>                       |

- |       |   |   |
|-------|---|---|
|       | sahaaraa  | help, assistance  |
|       | -kee sahaaree   | by means of   |
|       | kheet   | field (m)   |
| 9 A:  | <u>phir yah paanii naaliyōō-kee</u><br><u>sahaaree kheetōō-tak</u><br><u>pahūcaayaa jaataa hai.</u>   | <u>And then the water is taken to the</u><br><u>fields by means of these irriga-</u><br><u>tion ditches.</u>                                |
| 10 G: | <u>deekhiyee, nahar yah hai.</u>  | <u>See, this is a canal.</u>  |
|       | manaahii  | restriction, prohibition  |
| 11 W: | <u>kyaa nahaanee-kii manaahii</u><br><u>nahīī hai?</u>  | <u>Isn't it forbidden to bathe?</u>   |
|       | sab jagah   | everywhere  |
|       | ghaaT   | shore (m)   |
| 12 G: | <u>sab jagah too nahīī nahaa</u><br><u>saktee, leekin ghaaTōō-par</u><br><u>nahaanee-kaa prabandh kiyaa</u><br><u>gayaa hai.</u>              | <u>They can't bathe everywhere, but</u><br><u>a place for bathing has been</u><br><u>made along the shores.</u>                             |
|       | rahaT   | persian wheel (m)   |
| 13 G: | <u>yah sīcaaii-kaa puraanaa</u><br><u>tariikaa hai. isee rahaT</u><br><u>kahtee hāī.</u>  | <u>This is the old method of irrigation.</u><br><u>This is called a persian wheel.</u>  |
| 14 W: | <u>kyaa yah skuul sarkaarii hai?</u>  | <u>Is this a government school?</u>   |
|       | jantaa  | public (f)  |
|       | sahaaytaa   | aid, help (f)   |
| 15 G: | <u>jii nahīī, isee yahāā-kii</u><br><u>jantaa-nee khoolaa hai.</u><br><u>sarkaar-see bhii sahaaytaa</u><br><u>mīltii hai.</u>                 | <u>No, it was started by local people.</u><br><u>It also gets government aid.</u>   |
|       | śikśaa  | education (f)   |
| 16 W: | <u>mujhee pataa nahīī thaa, ki</u><br><u>gāāwōō-mēē śikśaa-kee liyee</u><br><u>itnii ruci hai.</u>  | <u>I didn't know that the villagers</u><br><u>took such an interest in</u><br><u>education.</u>   |
|       | wiśay   | subject (m)   |
|       | paRhaanaa   | to teach  |
| 17 G: | <u>ab too kaafii ruci paidaa hoo</u><br><u>gaii hai. yahāā sabhii</u><br><u>wiśayōō-kee paRhaanee-kaa</u><br><u>prabandh kiyaa gayaa hai.</u> | <u>There is a lot more interest now.</u><br><u>They have made arrangements for</u><br><u>teaching all sorts of subjects</u><br><u>here.</u> |
| 18 W: | <u>kyaa kyaa paRhaayaa jaataa hai?</u>  | <u>What is taught?</u>  |

kriṣi  
sambandh  
sambandhii  
kriṣi sambandhii  
bal  
-kee alaawaa  
sanskrit  
tathaa  
saayans

agriculture (f)  
relation (m)  
related to (postposition)  
related to agriculture  
emphasis, force (m)  
besides, leaving aside  
sanskrit (f)  
and  
science (f)

19 G: is skuul-mēē kriṣi-sambandhii  
paRhaaii-par zyaadaa bal  
diyaa jaataa hai. is-kee  
alaawaa sanskrit, hindii,  
angreezii, tathaa saayans  
bhii paRhaaii jaatii hāī.

In this school agricultural subjects  
are emphasized. Aside from that,  
Sanskrit, Hindi, English, and  
science are taught.

20 W: abhii tak kheetii-kee tariikōō-  
mēē kitnaa pariwartan aa  
sakaa hai.

How much have they been able to  
change their agricultural practices  
so far?

lakRii  
hal  
lochaa

wood  
plow (m)  
iron

21 G: kaafii aa gayaa hai. ab  
lakRii-kee halōō-kii jagah  
loohee-kee halōō-kaa  
prayog hoonee lagaa hai.

Quite a lot. They are now beginning  
to use the iron plow in place of  
the wooden plow.

pancaayat  
sabhaa

panchayat (f)  
council

22 G: caliyee, aap-koo pancaayat  
bhawan bhii dikhaaēē jis-  
mēē graam sabhaa-kii  
baiThkēē hootii hāī.

Come, I'll also show you the  
panchayat hall where the  
village council meetings are  
held.

sajnaa  
sajaa  
citr

to be decorated  
decorated  
portrait (m)

23 W: yah too bahut sajaa hai. yee  
citr kin loogōō-kee hāī?

Look at all the decorations on  
the walls. Who are the portraits of?

pradhaan

mantrii

pradhaan mantrii

raaṣṭr

pati

raaṣṭrpati

24 G: vah hamaaree pradhaan mantrii-  
kaa citr hai, aur wah  
raaṣṭrpati-kaa.

aadhunik

Dhang

25 W: aap-nee too bilkul aadhunik  
Dhang-kaa prabandh kar  
diyaa hai.

aasaanii

26 G: hāṁ, in bartanōṁ-mēṁ zaraa  
aasaanii rahtii hai, aur  
yee sundar bhii lagtee hāi.

principal, chief (m) (adj)

minister (m)

prime minister (m)

nation (m)

head, owner (m)

president (m)

This is a portrait of our Prime  
Minister and that is our  
President.

modern (adj)

style (m)

I see that everything is fixed  
in the modern style.

facility, ease

Yes, it is more convenient with  
these dishes, and they also look  
quite nice.

## Cultural Notes

Under India's Five-Year Plans, every Indian village has now become part of a Community Development Bloc, a regional grouping of villages for development purposes. Community Development officers provide technical assistance in agriculture, sanitation and other matters, and assist the villagers in widening the scope of village self-government and in obtaining other government services. To the villager, the most important member of the Community Development staff is the Village Level Worker or graam seewak, who lives in the village and is in daily contact with villagers.

Many of the recent changes in village life are due to the work of the Community Development Program. Additional evidence of the contribution the CDP has made to village life is seen in the artesian wells, known in India as tube wells, which dot the landscape of Western Uttar Pradesh. Wooden ploughs which have been in use in India for several thousand years are beginning to be replaced by steel ploughs and other modern farm machinery.

Despite the Government's preponderant role in development, evidence is not lacking that villagers themselves desire the changes which the CDP makes possible, and cooperate to achieve them. The school shown in this lesson was erected almost entirely by voluntary contribution of time and labor on the part of villagers and is on its way to becoming a modern technical junior college emphasizing agricultural training. Twenty-five years ago in this same village there was only one primary school teaching up to the fourth standard or grade, which was considered the terminal point of primary education under the British.

The construction of a panchayat house underlines the increasing importance of village self-government. The pictures of national and state leaders on its walls give evidence of growing interest and participation in political life on the part of the individual villager.

## Word Study

### 1. Stylistic alternants

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Urdu</u>	
kriṣi (f)	kheetii (f)	agriculture
tathaa	aur (conj)	and
citr (m)	taswiir (f)	picture
graam (m)	gāāw (m)	village

Items listed under Hindi occur primarily in formal Hindi. The Urdu forms are more frequent in conversation.

### 2. Related words

seewaa (f)	service	seewak (m)	servant, worker
aasaan	easy (adj)	aasaanii	ease
calnaa	to walk	calaanaa	to drive, operate a machine

3. jahāā and wahāā are paired in a manner similar to joo and woo, itnaa and itnaa, aisaa and aisaa, etc.

### 4. Additional vocabulary

faaydaa (m)	result, gain
raaj (m)	rule



## Rapid Response

### Group 1

graam seewak-kaa kyaa kaary hai.  
graam wikaas yoojnaa kin loogõõ-kii sahaaytaa kartii hai.  
nahar kis liyee banaaii gaii hai.  
jahãã nahar nahĩĩ hai, wahãã kyaa lagaatee hãĩ.  
paanii kheetõõ-tak kaisee pahũcaayaa jaataa hai.  
kyaa pahlee bhii naaliyãã thĩĩ?  
Tyuub bel-koo kaun calaataa hai.  
jahãã Tyuub bel nahĩĩ hai, wahãã sĩcaaii-kee liyee kyaa hootaa hai.  
baariš kam hoonee-kii wajah-see kin ciizõõ-kaa prabandh karnaa paRtaa hai.  
paanii kahãã-see baahar bahtaa hai.

### Group 2

kyaa har jagah nahaanee-kii ijaazat hai?  
kyaa naalii nahar-see baRii hai?  
nahar-kaa paanii kahãã-see aataa hai.  
loog nahar-mẽẽ kahãã snaan kar saktee hãĩ.  
nahar-kee sahaaree kyaa hoo rahaa hai.  
ghaaTõõ-par kis ciiz-kaa prabandh kiyaa gayaa hai.  
kyaa pahlee zamaanee-mẽẽ bhii Tyuub bel thee.  
Tyuub bel kin-kii sahaaytaa-see banaaee gae hõõgee.  
rahaT kyaa ciiz hootaa hai.  
sĩcaaii-kaa puraanaa tariikaa kaun saa hai.

### Group 3

gããw-kaa skuul kin loogõõ-nee banaayaa hai.  
sarkaar-see skuul-kee liyee kyaa miltaa hai.  
gããw-kii jantaa-nee kyaa kiyaa hai.  
gaawõõ-mẽẽ kis ciiz-kee liyee ruci hai.  
kyaa puraanee zamaanee-mẽẽ bhii šikšaa-mẽẽ ruci thii?  
kyaa bahut wišayõõ-kee paRhaanee-kaa prabandh kiyaa gayaa hai?

kyaa gāāw-kee loog sab beepaRhee hōōgee?  
wideešii-kaa śikšāa-kee haaree-mēē kyāa khayaal thaa.  
skuul-kee liyee kahāā-see sahaaytaa miltii hai.  
kyaa sarkaar-nee gāāw-mēē skuul khoolaa hai?  
skuul-mēē kriśi-kee alaawaa kyaa kyaa wiśay paRhaaee jaatee hāī.  
kriśi-par kyōō zyaadaa bal diyaa gayaa hoogaa.

Group 4

kyaa kheetii-kee taariikōō-mēē bhii pariwartan aa gayaa hai?  
lakRii-kee halōō-kii jagah kyaa isteemaal kiyaa jaataa hai.  
kyaa loohee-kaa hal lakRii-kee hal-see acchaa hai?  
jahāā gāāw sabhaa kii baiThkēē hootii hāī, us jagah-koo kyaa kaatee hāī.  
skuul-kee alaawaa graam seewak kyaa ciiz dikhaataa hai.  
pancaayat bhawan-mēē kis-kii baiThkēē hootii hāī.  
pancaayat bhawan-mēē kin-kee citr lagee hāī.  
hindustaan-kaa pradhaan mantrii kaun hoogaa.  
gāāw-kee loog caay-kee liyee aadhunik bartan kyōō isteemaal kartee hāī.  
pradhaan mantrii-kee citr-kee alaawaa aur kis-kaa citr lagaa hai.

## Situational Response

### graam seewak:

kyaa aap-nee yah nahar pahlee bhii deekhi hai?  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā Tyuub bel bhii hootee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee gaawōō-mēē sīcaaii-kii bhii zaruurat hai?  
sīcaaii-kee alaawaa aap kyaa deekhēūgee.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā nahar-mēē nahaanee-kii manaabii hai?  
kyaa aap jaantee hāī, ki rahaT kyaa hai?  
aap-kee yahāā kin kin ciizōō-mēē loogōō-kii ruci hai.  
aap-kee gaawōō-mēē kyaa kyaa wiśay paRhaaee jaatee hāī.  
kyaa aap sanskrit bhii paRh leetee hāī?  
kyaa aap-kee deē-mēē bhii itnii taraḱḱii hoo rahii hai?  
kyaa aap jaantee hāī, ki hal-see kyaa kaam hootaa hai?  
kyaa aap-nee pancaayat bhawan deekhaa hai?  
aap-kee raaṣṭrpati kaun hāī.  
kyaa aap-kee yahāā bhii aadhunik Dhang-kee Tyuub bel miltee hāī?  
kyaa aap caay binaa duudh-kii piyēēgee?

### wideeṣii:

naaliyōō-see kyaa kaam hootaa hai.  
yah Tyuub bel kis-kii sahaaytaa-see banaayaa gayaa hai.  
jahāā baariṣ bahut hootii hai, kyaa wahāā bhii Tyuub bel-kii zaruurat hai.  
sarkaar-nee Tyuub bel kahāā lagaaee hāī.  
Tyuub bel kaisee caltee hāī, bijlii-see?  
Tyuub bel-see paanii kyōō baahar aataa hai.  
paanii kheetōō-tak kaisee pahūcaayaa jaataa hai.  
kyaa nahar-kee sahaaree bhii sīcaaii hoo saktii hai?  
nahar aur naalii-mēē kyaa faraḱ hai.  
kyaa sab jagah nahaanee-kii ijaazat hai?  
kyaa rahaT ab bhii isteemaal kiyaa jaataa hai?  
skuul kis-nee banwaayaa hai.  
kyaa kheetii-kee taariikōō-mēē bhii pariwartan aa sakaa hai?  
gāāw sabhaa-kii baiThkēē kahāā hootii hāī.  
pancaayat grih-kii diiwaar-par kin loogōō-kee citr lagee hāī.

## Review Conversations

### gāw-mēē

1. A: jahāā baariś kaafii nahīī girtii, wahāā kyaa prabandh kiyaa jaa saktaa hai.  
B: aisiī jaghōō-mēē sīcaaii-kaa intizaam hoonaa caahiye.  
A: sīcaaii kis prakaar-see kii jaa saktii hai.  
B: nahar-see aur Tyuub bel-see bhii.  
A: Tyuub bel kahāā lagaatee hāī.  
B: jahāā nahar nahīī hāī, wahāā Tyuub bel lagaatee hāī.
2. A: yah nahar kab banii.  
B: yee Tyuub bel-kii naalii hai, joo pichlee saal banaaii gaii.  
A: kyaa gāw-waalōō-kee paas itnaa paisaa hai, ki wee khud Tyuub bel lagaa sakēē?  
B: nahīī, Tyuub bel lagaanee-mēē too graam wikaas yojnaa-kii taraf-see sahaaytaa miltii hai.
3. A: wahāā nahar-kee kinaaree, loog kyaa kar rahee hāī.  
B: wee loog nahaa rahee hāī.  
A: kyaa paanii gahraa nahīī hai?  
B: paanii too sab jagah gahraa hai, leekin wahāā nahaanee-kaa khaas prabandh kiyaa gaya hai.  
A: too kyaa har jagah nahaanee-kii ijaazat hai?  
B: jahāā intizaam kiyaa gaya hai, wahāā ijaazat hai, duusrii jaghōō-mēē too nahaanee-kii manaahii hai.
4. A: bataaiyee, graam wikaas yojnaa-see gāw-kee rahnee-waalōō-koo kyaa faaydaa huaa.  
B: bahut faaydaa huaa. ab too lakRii-kee hal-kii jagah loohee-kee hal isteemaal kartee hāī.  
A: aur kyaa faaydaa huaa.  
B: us-kee alaawa too makaan, kuēē, saRkēē, sab pakke hoonee lagee hāī.  
A: to kyaa aap-kaa khayaal hai, ki gāw-mēē kaafii tarakkii hoo rahii hai.  
B: hoo too rahii hai, magar aur bhii hoonii caahiye.

5. A: caaraa kaaTnee-kii maŝiin-see kyaa faaydaa hootaa hai.  
 B: jahāā pahlee doo naukarōō-kii zaruurat thii, caaraa kaaTnee-kee liyee, wahāā ab eek aadmii saaraa kaam kar leetaa hai.  
 A: too kyaa sarkaar-see bhii sahaaytaa miltii hai, maŝiin khariidnee-mēē.  
 B: nahīī, loogōō-koo khud khariidnaa hootaa hai.  
 A: too agar kisii-kee paas paisaa na hoo, too kyaa hoogaa.  
 B: phir ŝaayad graam wikaas yoojnaa-kii taraf-see sahaaytaa milee.
6. A: kahiye, yah graam wikaas yoojnaa kyaa ciiz hootii hai.  
 B: sarkaar-nee us-koo gāāw-waalōō-kii taraḱḱii-kee liyee banaayaa hai.  
 A: too adhiktar us-mēē kyaa kaam hootaa hai.  
 B: har eek gāāw-mēē eek graam seewak rahtaa hai. wah gāāw-waalōō-koo kriŝi-kee aadhunik tariiḱee sikhaataa hai.  
 A: kyaa paisaa bhii miltaa hai, in kaamōō-kee liyee?  
 B: hāā, saRkēē pakkii banaanee-kee liyee aur Tyuub bel lagaanee-kee liyee paisaa bhii mil saktaa hai.
7. A: gāāw-kaa raaj kin loogōō-kee haath-mēē hai.  
 B: ab too gāāw-waalee khud raaj kartee hāī.  
 A: yah kaisee hootaa hai.  
 B: har eek gāāw-mēē eek graam sabhaa hai. usii-see sab kaam hootaa hai.  
 A: graam sabhaa-kii baiThkēē kahāā hootii hāī.  
 B: wee too pancaayat bhawan-mēē hootii hāī.
8. A: kyaa gāāw-waalōō-koo ŝikŝaa-mēē bhii ruci hai?  
 B: ab too bahut ruci paidaa hoonee lagii hai.  
 A: kyaa skuul bhii hāī, deehaat mēē?  
 B: ab too bahut skuul khoolee gae hāī.  
 A: too wee sarkaar-kii sahaaytaa-kee sahaaree khoolee gae hōōgee.  
 B: nahīī, kabhii kabhii gāāw-waalee apnee paisee-see bhii skuul banwaatee hāī.
9. A: yahāā-kee loog kis ḱism-kee halōō-kaa prayoog kartee hāī.  
 B: ab too loohee-kee hal isteemaal kartee hāī.  
 A: aur yee hal kaisee calaatee hāī?  
 B: bailōō-see calaatee hāī.  
 A: kyaa traikTar nahīī hāī?  
 B: nahīī, kheet too bahut chooTee hāī, is liyee traikTar-kii zaruurat nahīī.

10. A: kheetii-kee Dhangōō-mēē ab kaafii pariwartan aa gae hāī.  
 B: hāā, thooRee bahut pariwartan too awaŷy aa gae hāī.  
 A: māī-nee deekhaa hai, ki kuēē bhii pakkee banaaee jaa rahee hāī, is-kaa kyaa kaaraN hai.  
 B: kaaraN yah hai, ki kuēē pakkee hoo jaṅnee-see paanii saaf rahtaa hai.  
 A: aaj too mujhee kii loohee-kee hai dikhaaii paRee. un halōō-see kyaa faaydaa hai.  
 B: faaydaa yahii hai, ki us-see kheetii-kaa kaam aaraam-see kiyaa jaa saktaa hai.

daftar-mēē

11. A: aap yahāā kis wiŷay-kaa adhyayan karnee-kee liyee aae hāī.  
 B: mujhee adhiktar antarraaŷTriiy wiŷayōō-mēē ruci hai.  
 A: kyaa aap-koo samaacaar patr-kii bhii zaruurat paReegii?  
 B: mujhee apnee wiŷay sambandhii samaacaar patrōō-kii zuruurat hoogii. kyaa wee yahāā-par milēēgee?  
 A: zaruur milēēgee. yahāā saarii duniyaa-kee akḥbaar rakhee hāī.
12. A: bataaiyee, gāāw-kee skuulōō-mēē kyaa wiŷay paRḥaaee jaatee hāī.  
 B: zyaadaatar too kheetii-kee baaree-mēē paRḥaayaa jaataa hai.  
 A: kyaa is-kee alaawaa aur kuch nahīī paRḥaayaa jaataa?  
 B: nahīī, kheetii-kee atirikt, hindii, angreezii, sanskrit, saayans bhii paRḥaaii jaatii hāī.  
 A: kyaa widyarthiyōō-mēē un wiŷayōō-mēē ruci hai?  
 B: ab too ŷikŷaa-mēē bahut ruci paidaa hoo gaii hai.

# APPENDIX

## 1. Cardinal Numbers

EEK	1	chabbiis	26	ikyaawan	51	chihattar	76
doo	2	sattaaiis	27	baawan	52	sathattar	77
tiin	3	aTThaaiis	28	tirpan	53	aThhattar	78
caar	4	untiis	29	cauwan	54	unaasii	79
pāāc	5	tiis	30	pacpan	55	assii	80
chah	6	iktiis	31	chappan	56	ikyaasii	81
saat	7	battiis	32	sattaawan	57	payaasii	82
aaTh	8	tēētiis	33	aTThaawan	58	tiraasii	83
nau	9	cāūtiis	34	unsaTh	59	cauraasii	84
das	10	pāītiis	35	saaTh	60	pacaasii	85
gyaarah	11	chattiis	36	iksaTh	61	chiyaasii	86
baarah	12	sāītiis	37	baasaTh	62	sattaasii	87
teerah	13	aRtiis	38	tirsaTh	63	aThaasii	88
caudāh	14	untaaliis	39	cāūsaTh	64	nawaasii	89
pandrah	15	caaliis	40	pāīsaTh	65	nabbee	90
soolah	16	iktaaliis	41	chaachaTh	66	ikyaanbee	91
satrah	17	bayaaliis	42	saRsaTh	67	baanbee	92
aThaarah	18	tēētaaliis	43	aRsaTh	68	tiraanbee	93
unniis	19	cauwaaliis	44	unhattar	69	cauraanbee	94
biis	20	pāītaaliis	45	sattar	70	pancaanbee	95
ikkiis	21	chiyaaliis	46	ikhattar	71	chiyaanbee	96
baaiis	22	sāītaaliis	47	bahattar	72	sattanbee	97
teeiis	23	aRtaaliis	48	tihattar	73	aTThaanbee	98
caubiis	24	uncaas	49	cauhattar	74	ninyaanbee	99
pacciis	25	pacaas	50	pachattar	75	sau	100

EEK sau eek 101

EEK hazaar 1,000

EEK laakh 100,000

EEK karoor 10,000,000

## 2. Common fractions

pāācwāā bhaag	1/5	sawaa	1 1/4
cauthaaii	1/4	DeeRh	1 1/2
tihaaii	1/3	Dhaaii	2 1/2
aadhaa	1/2	paunee doo	1 3/4
doo tihaaii	2/3	sawaa doo	2 1/4
paun	3/4	saaRhee tiin	2 1/2
caar baTee pāāc		4/5	
tiin sahii eek baTee tiin		3 1/3	
tiin sahii. pāāc baTee chah		3 5/6	
caar sahii chah baTee saat		4 6/7	
pāāc sahii saat baTee aaTh		5 7/8	
das sahii gyaarah baTee pandrah		10 11/15	

## 3. Ordinal numbers

pahlāa	first	saatwāā	seventh
duusraa	second	aaThwāā	eighth
tiisraa	third	nawāā	ninth
cauthaa	fourth	daswāā	tenth
pāācwāā	fifth	tyaarahwāā	eleventh
chaThāā, chaThwāā	sixth	baarahwāā	twelfth
	ikkiiswāā	twenty-first	
	paciiswāā	twenty-fifth	
	battiiswāā	thirty-second	
	pacaaswāā	fiftieth	
	sauwāā	hundredth	

## 4. Days of the week

### Hindi

itwaar (M)
soomwaar (M)
mangalwaar (mangal) (M)
budhwaar (budh) (M)
brihaspatiwaar (M)
Śukrwaar (M)
Śaniwaar (Śaniicar) (M)

### Urdu

itwaar (M)	Sunday
soomwaar, piir (M)	Monday
mangal (M)	Tuesday
budh (M)	Wednesday
jumeraat (F)	Thursday
jumaa (M)	Friday
sanīicar (M)	Saturday



## 5. Time of day

saweeraa (M)	morning	raat (F)	night
saweeree	in the morning	raat-koo	at night
subah (F)	morning	doo pahar (M)	noon, midday
subah	in the morning	doo pahar-koo	at noon

## 6. Months of the year

janwarii (F)	January	julaaii (F)	July
farwarii (F)	February	agast (M)	August
maarc (M)	March	sitambar (M)	September
aprail (M)	April	aktuubar (M)	October
mai (F)	May	nawambar (M)	November
juun (M)	June	disambar (M)	December

## 7. Seasons

### Hindi

jaaRaa (M)	winter
hemant (M)	winter (literary)
śiśir (M)	winter (literary)
garmii (F)	summer
basant (M)	spring
griiṣm (M)	summer (literary)
barsaat (F)	rainy season
paawas (M)	rainy season (literary)
śarad (F)	autumn

### Urdu

sarmaa (M)	winter
garmaa (M)	winter
bahaar (F)	spring
khizāā (F)	autumn
barśagaal (M)	rainy season (literary)
barsat (F)	rainy season

## 8. Telling time

tiin bajee	three o'clock
tiin baj-kar pāāc mināT	five after three
sawaa tiin bajee	three-fifteen
saaRhee tiin bajee	three-thirty
paunee caar bajee	three forty-five, quarter to four
caar bajnee-mēē das mināT	ten minutes to four

## 9. Terms for time spans

sekanD (M)	second	din (M)	day
mināT (M)	minute	saptaah, haftaa (M)	week
ghanTaa (M)	hour	mahinaa (M)	month
		warś, saal (M)	year

10. Weights

seer (M)	one seer	(about 2 pounds)
man (M)	one maund	(about 82 pounds)
chaTāāk (M)	one chatauk	(about 2 ounces)

11. Measures

inc (M)	one inch	farlaang (M)	one furlong (220 yards)
foot (M)	one foot	miil (M)	one mile
gaz (M)	one yard		

12. Money

rupayaa (M)	one rupee
nayaa paisaa (M)	1/100 of a rupee

old coins:

aanaa (M)	one anna (1/16 of a rupee)
paisaa (M)	one pice (1/64 of a rupee)

# HINDI-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

A	Adjective
Adv	Adverb
Ap	Appendix
Conj	Conjunction
F	Feminine noun
GN	Grammar notes
Inter	Interrogative
M	Masculine noun
M/F	Masculine or feminine noun
Obl	Oblique
P	Postposition
Part	Particle
Pl	Plural
Pro	Pronoun
RC	Review conversation
Rel	Relative
Sg	Singular
V	Verb, intransitive
V A	Verb, auxiliary
V T	Verb, transitive
V n	Verb, intransitive, but takes <u>-nee</u>
V Tnn	Verb, transitive, but doesn't take <u>-nee</u>
WS	Word study

---

7B	ādheeraa	M	darkness
8A	akeelaa	A	alone
7A WS	aktuubar	M	October
4A	akbar	M	(name of Moghul emperor)
5B	akṣar	M	letter of alphabet, syllable
7B	aksar	Adv	often
10A WS	akhbaar	M	newspaper
3B	agar	Conj	if
7A WS	agast	M	August
2A	aglaa	A	next
1C WS	angreezii	A	English
1A	acchaa	A	good
7A	acraj	M	surprise
5B	ajiib	A	strange
3A WS	aTThaaais	A	twenty-eight
7B WS	aTThaanbee	A	ninety-eight
6A WS	aTThaawan	A	fifty-eight
7B WS	aTThaasii	A	eighty-eight
2A WS	aThaarah	A	eighteen
7A WS	aThhattar	A	seventy-eight
4B WS	aRtaaliis	A	forty-eight
4A WS	aRtiis	A	thirty-eight
6B	aDDaa	M	stand (bus)
6B WS	aRsaTh	A	sixty-eight
2B	anDarwiyar	M	undershorts
8A	atithi	M	guest
5A	adhik	A	many, more

5A	adhiktar	Adv	mostly
10A	adhyayan	M	study, research
10A	adhyayan-kakš	M	reading room
9A WS	anaaj	M	grain
9B WS	antar	M	difference
10A	antarraašTriiy	A	international
1C	andar	Adv	inside
1C	apnaa	A	one's own
8B WS	apnee aap	Adv	by oneself
7A	aprail	M	April
2C WS	ab	Adv	now
2A	abhii	Adv	now, right now
3A WS	amiir	A	rich
1C	amriikaa	M	America
1C WS	amriikan	M/F	American
9B	aree	Part	oh, hey (exclamation)
8B	alag	A	separate
8B WS	alag karnaa	V T	to separate
8B WS	alag hoonaa	V	be separated
1A	aliigaRh	M	Aligarh (city)
4B WS	almaarii	F	closet
6B	awašy	Adv	certainly
8A WS	asal-měě	Adv	in reality
7A WS	assii	A	eighty
4C WS	šākh	F	eye
8A	aag	F	fire
3B	aagee	Adv	ahead, in front
8B WS	aagyāā	F	permission
3A	aagraa	M	Agra (city)
1B	aaj	Adv	today
4B	aaj-kal	Adv	these days
5B WS	aazaad	A	free
5B	aazaadii	F	freedom
1B WS	aaTh	A	eight
8B	aadat	F	custom, habit
4C	aadaab arz	M	greetings (Moslem)
8A	aadi	Adv	et cetera
2B	aadmii	M	man
5B	aadhaa	A	half
10B	aadhunik	A	modern
1A	aanaa	V	come
1A	aanaa	M	anna (coin)
1C	aanaa jaanaa	V	come and go, commute
1A WS	aap	Pro	you (polite)
3A	aap loog	Pro	you (polite, Pl)
4B	aabaadii	F	population, inhabitants
8B	aam	A	ordinary
8B	aam taur-par	Adv	normally
4A	aaraam	M	comfort, rest
9A WS	aaluu	M	potato
6B WS	aawašyak	A	necessary
7B WS	aawašyaktaa	F	necessity
4C	aasafii masjid	F	Asafi Mosque
2B WS	aasaan	A	easy
10B	aasaanii	F	facility, ease
7A	aasaar	M	indication
7A	aasmaan	M	sky

9B	ikaTThaa	A	together
3A WS	ikkiis	A	twenty-one
4B WS	iktaaliis	A	forty-one
4A WS	iktiis	A	thirty-one
7B WS	ikyaanbee	A	ninety-one
6A WS	ikyaawan	A	fifty-one
7A WS	ikyaasii	A	eighty-one
6B WS	iksaTh	A	sixty-one
7A WS	ikhattar	A	seventy-one
6B	icchaa	F	desire
4C	ijaazat	F	permission
8B WS	ijaazat deenaa	V T	permit
6A	injan	M	engine, motor
8B	itmiinaan	M	ease, comfort
2C	itnaa	A	this much
6A	itwaar	M	Sunday
2A	idhar	Adv	this direction, here
2B	in	Pro	these (Obl Pl of yee)
Ap	inc	M	inch
4A	intizaam	M	arrangement
4A	intizaam karnaa	V T	make arrangements
2C	intizaar	M	wait, expectation
2C	intizaar karnaa	V T	wait
4A	imaarat	F	building
6A	iraadaa	M	intention
8A	ilaahaabaad	M	Allahabad (city)
1A	is	Pro	this (Obl Sg of yee)
3C	is liyee	Adv	therefore
8B	isteemaal	M	use
8B	isteemaal karnaa	V T	use
8B WS	isteemaal hoonaa	V	be used
4C	iid	F	Eid (Moslem festival)
4C	iid mubaarak	M	Happy Eid
6A	iiswar	M	God (Hindu)
4C WS	ũnglii	F	finger
4A	ujaaRnaa	V T	desert
3B WS	uThnaa	V	sit up, get up
3B	uThaanaa	V T	lift, carry
5A	uttar	M	north
5A	uttar pradeeš	M	Uttar Pradesh (state)
3A	utnaa	A	that much
5A	utnaa...jitnaa ki		as much...as
10A	uddeešy	M	aim, purpose
1B	udhar	Adv	that direction
2A	un	Pro	those (Obl Pl of woo)
7A WS	unaasii	A	seventy-nine
4B WS	uncaas	A	forty-nine
4A WS	untaaliis	A	thirty-nine
3A WS	untiis	A	twenty-nine
2A WS	unniis	A	nineteen
6A WS	unsaTh	A	fifty-nine
6B WS	unhattar	A	sixty-nine
10A	upanyaas	M	novel
2A WS	ušaa	F	woman's name
2A	us	Pro	that (Obl Sg of woo)
1C WS	urduu	F	Urdu

4B	ũũcaa	A	high
3B	uupar	Adv	above
3B	ekspres	F	express (train)
1A	eek	A	one
4C	eek saa	A	same
4C	eek saath	Adv	all together
5B	eek taraf	Adv	on one side
9A	eek dam	Adv	all at once, entirely
3A	ai	Part	hey, oh (exclamation)
3A	aisaa	A	this way
8B	auzaar	M	tool
1B	aur	Conj	and
2B	aur	A	other, additional
2B WS	aurat	F	woman
7A WS	kaii	Pro	many
10A	kakš	M	room
1B WS	kaccaa	A	unripe
9A WS	kaTaanaa	V T	have cut
9A WS	kaTnaa	V	be cut
8A WS	kaThin	A	difficult
8A	kaThinaaii	F	difficulty
10A	kap	M	cup
1C	kapRaa	M	cloth
2B	kab	Adv	when
6B	kabhii	Adv	sometimes
1C	kam	A	less, few
6B	kam-see kam	Adv	at least
4A	kamii	F	shortage
2B	kamiiz	F	shirt
1C WS	kamraa	M	room
3A	kar	Part	having... (with verb)
4B WS	karaanaa	V T	have (something) done
6A WS	kariib	Adv	approximately
7B WS	karooR	M	ten million
1A WS	karnaa	V T	make, do
2B	kal	Adv	tomorrow
10A	kawi	M	poet
3C	kašT	M	trouble
1B	kahää	Adv	where
10A WS	kahaanii	F	story
2A	kahnaa	V T	say
3C	kahĩĩ	Adv	anywhere, somewhere, somehow
8B	kahlaanaa	V T	name something
1A	kaa	P	of
2A	kaagaz	M	paper
9A	kaaTnaa	V T	cut
4C WS	kaan	M	ear
4A	kaafii	A	enough, quite
5B	kaafii	F	coffee
5B	kaafii haaus	M	coffee house
2A	kaam	M	work
5B WS	kaar	M	work, vocation, project
5A	kaaraN	M	reason, cause
5B	kaary	M	work, profession
5B	kaary kartaa	M	worker

10A	kaary kram	M	function, event
10A	kaary widhi	F	manner of work
10A	kaaryaalay	M	office
5A	kaal	M	age, period
2C WS	kaalaa	A	black
10A WS	kaawy	M	poem
5A	kaašii	F	Kashi (old name of Banaras)
5A	ki	Conj	that
1B WS	kitaab	F	book
1B	kitnaa	A	how much
2A	kidhar	Adv	where, which way
	kin	Pro	what, who (Inter, Obl Pl)
4A	kinaaraa	M	corner, side, edge
3A	ķilaa	M	fort
	kis	Pro	what, who (Inter, Obl Sg)
5A	kis liyee	Adv	why, for what reason
3C	kisii	Pro	some, someone (Obl of kooii)
9B	kisii samay	Adv	sometime
4A	ķism	F	kind
	-kii tarah	Adv	towards
7B WS	-kii wajah-see	P	because of
9A	kuāā	M	well
1C	kuch	Pro	some, somewhat
7A	kuch na kuch	Pro	something or other
2B WS	kurtaa	M	tunic
1C	kursii	F	chair
3B	kulii	M	porter
8A	kušal	M	well-being
8A	kušal	A	fine
10A	-kee atirikt	P	in addition, besides
3B	-kee andar	P	inside of
8A WS	-kee alaawaa	P	besides, aside from
3B WS	-kee aagee	P	in front of
2B	-kee uupar	P	on top of, above
7B WS	-kee kaaraN	P	because of
2B WS	-kee niicee	P	under, below
2B	-kee pahlee	P	before
7B	-kee paar	P	across
2C	-kee paas	P	with, near
3B WS	-kee piichee	P	behind
2B	-kee baad	P	after, afterwards
1C	-kee liyee	P	for
10B	-kee sahaaree	P	by means of
3B	-kee saath	P	with
1A	keelaa	M	banana
5A	keewal	Adv	only
1A	kaisaa	A	how
6A	kaisee	Adv	how, in what manner
1C	-koo	P	to
2B	kooii	Pro	any, some, anyone, someone
2B WS	kooT	M	coat
3C	kooThii	F	dwelling, residence
8A	koonaa	M	corner
2B	koošii	F	attempt
2B	koošii karnaa	V T	try
2C	kaun	Pro	who (Inter)
1A	kyaa (stressed)	Pro	what (Inter)
1B	kyaa (unstressed)	Adv	(question word)
2C	kyōō	Adv	why (Inter)
6A	kripaa	F	kindness, favor
10B	krišii	F	agriculture
3B	klaas	M	class
10B	ķseetr	M	area, region

4A	khāDhar	M	ruins
3B	khaRaa	A	standing
3B	khaRaa hoonaa	V	stand
5A	khaRaaũũ	M	wooden sandal
1C WS	khataam	A	finished
1C WS	khataam karnaa	V T	finish
4C	khataam hoonaa	V	be finished, finish
9B	khataarnaak	A	dangerous
9B WS	khatraa	M	danger
8A WS	khabar	F	news
4C	khayaal	M	opinion
1B WS	kharaab	A	bad
6A	kharaabii	F	defect, trouble
1C	khariidnaa	V T	buy
8B	khaaT	F	bed, cot
8B	khaatir	F	honor, service
8B	khaatir karnaa	V T	serve
5B	khaadii	F	handspun cloth
1A	khaanaa	V	eat
2A WS	khaan	M	(family name)
4A	khaalii	A	empty, free
3A	khaas	A	important, special
5B	khaas taur-par	Adv	especially
3B	khiRkii	F	window
4C	khilaunaa	M	toy
8B	khud	A	oneself
6A WS	khudaa	M	God (Moslem)
1B	khurcan	F	khurcan (Indian sweet)
3B WS	khulaa	A	open
3B WS	khulnaa	V	be opened
6A	khuii	F	happiness
4B	khuib	Adv	fine, well
4A	khuibsuurat	A	beautiful
9A WS	kheet	M	field
9A	kheetii	F	agriculture
9A WS	kheetii karnaa	V T	farm
4C	kheel	M	game
4A	kheelnaa	V	play
3C WS	khoonaa	V T	lose
3B WS	khoolnaa	V T	open
7A	gangaa	F	Ganges (river)
Ap	gaz	M	yard
5B	ganj	M	marketplace
5B	ganjing	F	walking in Hazrat Ganj
4C	galaa	M	throat, neck
5A	galii	F	lane
4C	galee milnaa	V	embrace
3A	garam	A	hot
3A	gariib	A	poor
3A	garmii	F	heat, summer
9B	gahraa	A	deep
4B	gaaiD	M	guide
3B	gaaiRii	F	vehicle, car, cart
9A	gaay	F	cow
4A	gaahak	M/F	customer
2B	ginnaa	V T	count
7A WS	girnaa	V	fall
4A	gilaaf	M	cover



2A WS	guptaa	M	(family name)
4A WS	goošt	M	meat
2A WS	gyaarah	A	eleven
10B	graam	M	village
10B	graam seewak	M	village-level worker
10A	grih	M	house
Ap	griiřm	M	summer
2C	ghanTaa	M	hour
2B	ghar	M	house, home
7A	ghaaT	M	riverbank, bathing area
6B WS	ghii	M	clarified butter
3A	ghuumnaa	V	wander, walk or ride around
9A	gheer	M	cattle corral
9A	cakkar	M	circle
9A	cakkar lagaanaa	V T	walk around
9B	caRhaaii	F	ascend, climb
5A	caRhaanaa	V T	make an offering
4B WS	caRhnaa	V	climb
4B	caRhwaanaa	V T	have (something) offered
6B WS	capaatii	F	flat wheat bread
2B WS	cappal	F	sandal, slipper
10A	capraasii	M	office boy
5A	camRaa	M	leather
6A	calaa jaanaa	V	go away
10B	calaanaa	V T	operate, drive
3A	calnaa	V	walk, move
1C	cāādnii	F	moonlight
1C	cāādnii cauk	M	Chandni Chowk (street in Delhi)
8A WS	caacaa	M	father's younger brother
8B	caadar	F	sheet, cloth
5B WS	caay	F	tea
1B WS	caar	A	four
9A	caaraa	M	fodder
4B	caarōō	A	all four
4A WS	caaliis	A	forty
4A WS	caawal	M	rice
2B	caahiyee	Adv	needed
3C	caahnaa	V T	want
2B	ciiz	F	thing
4A	ciTThii	F	letter
9A WS	citt prasann	A	in a state of well-being
10B	citr	M	portrait
6B	ciinii	F	sugar
9B	cuknaa	V	finish
8A	cuulhaa	M	oven
9B	cooTii	F	peak
4A WS	cāūtiis	A	thirty-four
6B WS	cāūsath	A	sixty-four
1C	cauk	M	square, mall
5A WS	cauRaa	A	wide
3B WS	cauthaa	A	fourth
2A WS	caudah	A	fourteen
3A WS	caubiis	A	twenty-four
7B WS	cauraanbee	A	ninety-four
7A WS	cauraasii	A	eighty-four
6A WS	cauwan	A	fifty-four
4B WS	cauwaaliis	A	forty-four
7A WS	cauhattar	A	seventy-four

Ap	chaTāāk	M	catauk (weight)
Ap	chaThāā	A	sixth
Ap	chaThwāā	A	sixth
4B WS	chat	F	roof
4A WS	chattiis	A	thirty-six
6A WS	chappan	A	fifty-six
3A WS	chabbiis	A	twenty-six
1B WS	chah	A	six
6B WS	chaachaTh	A	sixty-six
7B WS	chiyaanbee	A	ninety-six
4B WS	chiyaaliis	A	forty-six
6B WS	chiyaasaTh	A	sixty-six
7B WS	chiyaasii	A	eighty-six
7A WS	chihattar	A	seventy-six
7A	chuTTii	F	vacation, free time
7A	chuuTnaa	V	leave (trains, ships, etc.)
1B	chooTaa	A	small
7A WS	chooRnaa	V T	leave behind
Ap	chauthaaii	M	one-fourth
3A	jagah	F	place, spot
8B	zanaanaa	A	feminine, pertaining to women
7A	jantaa	F	public
7A WS	janwarii	F	January
6A	jab	Conj	when
5A WS	zabaan	F	language, tongue
8B	jamaa	A	collected, together
8B	jamaa karnaa	V T	collect
4C	jamaa hoonaa	V	be congregated
8B WS	jamaanaa	V T	consolidate, freeze
4B	zamaanaa	M	time, period
1B WS	zamiin	F	ground, land, floor
8B	jamnaa	V	solidify
10A	jayantii	F	anniversary
2A	zaraa	Adv	a little
1C	zaruur	Adv	certainly
3B	zaruurat	F	need, desire, necessity
6B	zaruurii	A	necessary
1B WS	jaldii	F	haste, hurry
2A	jaldii karnaa	V T	hurry
10A	jalpaan	M	snack
4C	jawaan	A	young
1C WS	jawaab	M	answer
10B	jahāā	Adv	which place
10B	jahāā...wahāā	Adv	where...there
7A	jaaRaa	M	winter, cold season
8A	jaan paRnaa	V	appear
1C	jaanaa	V	go
9A	jaanwar	M	animal
4A	jaalii	F	screen, network, net
6B	jitnaa	A	as much
	jin	Pro	which, who (Rel, Obl Pl)
	jis	Pro	which, who (Rel, Obl Sg)
1B	jii	Part	(honorific)
6A WS	jumaa	M	Friday
6A WS	jumeeraat	F	Thursday
7A	julāaii	F	July
2A	juutaa	M	shoe, pair of shoes
7A WS	juun	M	June
4A	jaipur	M	Jaipur (city)
3A	jaisaa	A	as
3B	joo	Pro	which, who (Rel)

6B	joo bhii	Pro	whatever
1A	moor-see	Adv	loudly
2A	zyaadaa	A	too much
5A WS	zyaadaatar	Adv	mostly
9B	jhiil	F	lake
3B	jhoolaa	M	bag
3B	TikaT	M	ticket
1C WS	Tiicar	M/F	teacher
2C	TuuTaa	A	broken
8B	TuuTnaa	V	be broken
6A	Teeliifuun	M	telephone
3C	Taiksii	F	taxi
3C	Taiksii sTainD	M	taxi stand
4A WS	Toopii	F	cap, hat
10B	Tyuub bel	M	mechanically pumped deep well
6A	Treen	F	train
3A WS	ThanD	F	cold
3A	ThanDaa	A	cold
9A	Thaakur	M	chief (honorific)
1A WS	Thiik	Adv	correct
2A	Thiik karnaa	V T	fix
3A	Thairnaa	V	stop, stay
9B	Dar	M	fear
5B	Daal deenaa	V T	put in, pour in
5B	Daalnaa	V T	insert
10A	DirekTar	M/F	director
Ap	DeeRh	A	one and one-half
3C	Draaiwar	M	driver
4A	Dhang	M	style
6A	Dhaaii	A	two and one-half
3C	DhũũDhnaa	V T	search
2B	-tak	P	until
8B	takalluf	M	formality
6A	takliif	F	trouble
8B	takht	M	board, sitting platform
10B	tathaa	Conj	and
6B	tanuur	M	brick oven
3C	tab	Adv	in that case
5A	tabhii too	Conj	that's why
4C	tamaašaa	M	show, performance
7B	tarakḳii	F	progress
3A	taraf	F	direction
2A	tarah	F	manner
3C	talaas	F	search
3C	talaas karnaa	V T	look for
8B	tašriif	F	graciousness
8B	tašriif rakhnaa	V T	sit down (polite)
8B	tašriif laanaa	V Tnn	come (polite)
10B WS	taswiir	F	picture
4A	tāāgaa	M	tonga (horsedrawn conveyance)
8A WS	taauu	M	father's older brother
3A	taaj mahal	M	Taj Mahal
1A	taazaa	A	fresh
7A WS	taajjub	M	surprise

5B WS	taalib ilm	M/F	student
7B WS	tiraanbee	A	ninety-three
7A WS	tiraasii	A	eighty-three
6A WS	tirpan	A	fifty-three
6B WS	tirsaTh	A	sixty-three
7A WS	tihattar	A	seventy-three
Ap	tihaaaii	M	one-third
1B WS	tiin	A	three
5A	tiirth	M	pilgrimage
5A	tiirth sthaan	M	place of pilgrimage
3A WS	tiis	A	thirty
3B WS	tiisraa	A	third
2C	tumhaaraa	A	your
4B WS	tēētaaliis	A	forty-three
4A WS	tēētiis	A	thirty-three
3A WS	teeiis	A	twenty-three
5B	teez	A	fast, strong
2A WS	teerah	A	thirteen
2C	taiyaar	A	ready
4C	taiyaarii	F	preparations
1B	too	Part	then, but
8B	tooRnaa	V T	break
4C	tyoohaar	M	festival
7B	thakaa	A	tired
2C	thaa	V A	was (past of hai)
8A	thaalii	F	eating tray
2A	thooRaa	A	a little
5A WS	dakṣiN	M	south
6A WS	dafaa	F	time, occasion
7B	daftar	M	office
9A	dam	M	breath
10A	dayaa	F	kindness
8B	darii	F	rug, bedspread
4A	darwaazaa	M	door
9A	darṣan	M	vision, sight
9A	darṣan karnaa	V T	see, visit
1B	das	A	ten
6B	dahii	M	curds, yogurt
8A WS	daadaa	M	grandfather
8A WS	daadii	F	grandmother
1A	daam	M	price
6B WS	daal	F	any cooked vegetable of lentil family
9A	daawat	F	feast
1B	daahinaa	A	right
9A	dikhaaii	F	appearance
9B	dikhaaii deenaa	V	appear
9A	dikhaaii paRnaa	V	look, seem
1C	dikhaanaa	V T	show
4A	dikhnaa	V	seem, appear
3A WS	din	M	day
1C	dillii	F	Delhi (city)
6A	dilcasp	A	interesting
6B	dilcaspaii	F	interest
7A WS	disambar	M	December
4A	diiwaar	F	wall
1B	dukaan	F	shop, store, stand
1B WS	dukaandaar	M	shopkeeper
4C	duniyā	F	world

4A	dublaa	A	lean (person)
5B	duudh	M	milk
3B	duun ekspres	F	Doon Express (train)
3C	duur	F	distance
3B WS	duusraa	A	second, next
5B	duusrii taraf	Adv	on the other side
1C	deekhnaa	V T	look, see
1A	deenaa	V T	give
2B	deer	F	delay
5B	deew naagrii	F	Devanagari
4A	dees̃	M	country
6A	deehaat	M	countryside
1B WS	dohraanaa	V T	repeat
1B WS	doo	A	two
2B	doo pahar	M	afternoon
1B	doonõõ	A	both
3C	doost	M/F	friend
9B	drišy	M	view
3C	dhanywaad	M	thanks
2C	dhabbaa	M	spot
5A	dharm	M	religion, duty
5A	dhaarmik	A	religious
1B WS	dhiiree	Adv	slowly
2C	dhulaaii	F	washing charges
2B	dhulaanaa	V T	have washed
3A	dhuup	F	sunshine
2B WS	dhootii	F	dhoti (garment)
2B WS	dhoonaa	V T	wash
2C	dhoobii	M	washerman
2B	na	Part	(negative)
3C	naii dillii	F	New Delhi (city)
9A	nakšaa	M	pattern, map
5A	nagar	M	city
7A	nazar	F	sight
7A	nazar aanaa	V	come into view
9B WS	nazaaraa	M	view
3C	nazdiik	Adv	near
6A	nadii	F	river
7B WS	nabbee	A	ninety
5B	namak	M	salt
4C WS	namaskaar	F	greetings (Hindu, formal)
1C RC	namastee	F	greetings (Hindu)
4C	namaaz	F	prayers (Moslem)
4C	namaaz paRhnaa	V T	pray (Moslems)
5B	namkiin	M	any salted snack food
1B WS	nambar	M	number
2A WS	nayaa	A	new
7A WS	nawambar	M	November
7B WS	nawaasii	A	eighty-nine
10B	nahar	F	canal
7A	nahaanaa	V n	bathe
1A	nahĩĩ	Part	no
6B	nahĩĩ too	Conj	otherwise
4C WS	naak	F	nose
6B	naagal	M	Nagal (village)
6B	naan	F	a kind of flat bread
10B	naalii	F	drain, ditch
7B	naaw	F	boat

# Glossary

3B WS	nikalnaa	V	come out
3B	nikaalnaa	V T	take out
7B WS	ninyaanbee	A	ninety-nine
4A	niṣaan	M	mark, sign
7B	nīd	F	sleep
3B WS	niicaa	A	low
3B WS	niicee	Adv	below
5B	niibuu	M	lemon
2C WS	niilaa	A	blue
4A	-nee	P	(agent marker with -aa participle)
2A	nainitaal	M	Nainital (city)
2C	noot	M	banknote
1B WS	nau	A	nine
9A	naukar	M	servant
4A	pakaRnaa	V T	catch
8A	pakaanaa	V T	cook
6B WS	pakauRaa	M	a deep fried vegetable food
1A	pakkaa	A	ripe
4A	pagRii	F	turban
6A WS	pacaas	A	fifty
7A WS	pacaasii	A	eighty-five
3A WS	pacciis	A	twenty-five
4B	pacciisii	F	Parchisi (game)
6A WS	pacpan	A	fifty-five
7B WS	pancaanbee	A	ninety-five
10B	pancaayat	F	panchayat
7A WS	pachattar	A	seventy-five
7A	paTnaa	M	Patna (city)
4A	paRnaa	V	fall, lie
4A WS	paRhaa likhaa	A	literate
10B	paRhaanaa	V T	teach
2C WS	paRhnaa	V T	read, study, pray
3C	pataa	M	address, knowledge
3C	pataa lagaanaa	V	locate
8A WS	pati	M	husband
8A	patnii	F	wife
10A	patrikaa	F	magazine
4A WS	patlaa	A	thin (object)
8A	padhaarna	V	proceed (polite)
2A WS	pandrah	A	fifteen
1A	papiitaa	M	papaya
1B	-par	P	on
10A	paricay	M	acquaintance
9A	paricit	A	acquainted
9A	pariwartan	M	change
8A WS	pariwaar	M	family
8B	pareeṣaan	A	troubled, inconvenienced
8B	pareeṣaani	F	difficulty, trouble
4B	parsōō	Adv	day before yesterday, day after tomorrow
5A WS	paṣcim	M	west
1C	pasand	A	pleasing
2B	pahar	M	span of three hours
9B	pahaaR	M	mountain
7B	pahūcaanaa	V T	transport
2B	pahūcnaa	V	arrive
4A WS	pahenna	V T	wear, put on (clothes)
4C	pahcaanna	V	recognize
3A	pahlaa	A	first
3A	pahlee	Adv	at first
7B	pahleejaa	M	Pahleja (place name)

1B WS	pāāc	A	five
3B WS	pāācwāā	A	fifth
4C WS	pāāw	M	foot
7B	paaT	M	width (river)
6A	paanaa	V T	find
3A	paanii	M	water
7B	paar karnaa	V T	cross
2A	paaliś karnaa	V T	polish
Ap	paawas	M	rainy season
2C	paas	Adv	close
3B	pichlaa	A	last, previous
8A WS	pitaa	M	father (formal)
3B	piichaa	M	the rear
3B WS	piichee	Adv	after
4A	piital	M	brass
3A	piinaa	V T	drink
6A WS	piir	M	Monday
2C	piilaa	A	yellow
2A	puraanaa	A	old
6A	pul	M	bridge
2A WS	puśpaa	F	(woman's name)
5A	pustak	F	book
10A	pustakaalay	M	library
1C WS	puuchnaa	V T	ask
4C WS	puujaa	F	prayer (Hindu)
4C WS	puujaa karnaa	V T	pray (Hindus)
5A WS	puurab	M	east
6B WS	puurii	F	capaatii fried in deep fat
1B WS	pensil	F	pencil
10A	peepar baik	A	paper back
1B	peeRaa	M	an Indian sweet
4B WS	pāītaaliis	A	forty-five
4A WS	pāītiis	A	thirty-five
6B WS	pāīsaTh	A	sixty-five
2B	paijaamaa	M	pajamas
2B WS	painT	M	trousers
3C	paidal	Adv	on foot
8B	paidaa karnaa	V T	grow, raise
7A WS	paidaa hoonaa	V	be born
1B	paisaa	M	money, pice
9B	poosTar	M	poster
8A	paudhaa	M	plant
Ap	paun	A	three-quarters
5A	prakaar	M	kind, type
10A	prakaasān	M	publications
10A WS	prakaasāk	M	publisher
10A	prakaasit	A	published
10A	prakaasit hoonaa	V	be published
8A	pratidin	Adv	every day
10A	pratiikśaa	F	wait
10A	pratiikśaa karnaa	V T	wait
5A	pradeeś	M	province
10B	pradhaan	A	principal, chief
10B	pradhaan mantrii	M	prime minister
7A	prabandh	M	arrangements, management, control
10A	prabandhak	M	person in charge
10A	prayoog	M	use
10A	prayoog karnaa	V T	use
10A	praśansaa	F	praise
7A WS	prasann	A	happy

7A	prasanntaa	F	happiness
5A	prasiddh	A	famous
5A	praaciin	A	old, ancient
5B	pleeT	N	plate
3B	pleeTfaarm	M	platform
4C	pyaaraa	A	lovely
3A	pyaas	F	thirst
3A WS	pyaasaa	A	thirsty
2A	phaTaa	A	torn
4A GN	phaTnaa	V	be torn
4A	fatehpur siikrii	M	Fatehpur Sikri (city)
1A	phal	M	fruit
9B	farak	M	difference
Ap	farlaang	M	furlong
7A WS	farwaarii	F	February
4A	farṣ	M	floor
3B	farsT klaas	M	first class
9A	phasal	F	crops, harvest
3C	phaaTak	F	gate
10B WS	faaydaa	M	result, gain
1A WS	phir	Conj	again, then
5A	phir bhii	Conj	nevertheless
6A	fursat	F	leisure
5A	phuul	M	flower
9B	phailnaa	V	be spread
Ap	foot	M	foot
6B WS	foon karnaa	V T	telephone
3B	bakas	M	box
3C WS	banglaa	M	residence, bungalow
4C	baccaa	M	child
4C	baccii	F	little girl
3A	bacnaa	V	be careful, be saved
2B	bajaanaa	V T	play (instrument)
2B	bajnaa	V	strike (hour)
3C	baTaa	A	over (arithmetic)
1B WS	baRaa	A	big
1C	bataanaa	V T	tell
4A WS	battiis	A	thirty-two
4C WS	badan	M	body
5B	badalnaa	V T	change
5B WS	badlaanaa	V T	have (something) changed
4C	badhaaii	F	felicitations
4A	banaanaa	V T	make, build
1C	banaaras	M	Banaras (city)
1C	banaarsii	A	from Banaras
2B	baniyaaain	F	undershirt
3B	band	A	closed
3B WS	band karnaa	V T	close
4A	bannaa	V	be made
4A	banwaanaa	V T	have (something) made
4B WS	bayaaliis	A	forty-two
7A WS	bayaasii	A	eighty-two
6B	baraf	F	ice, snow
8B	baraamdaa	M	verandah
8A WS	baras	M	year
7A	barasnaa	V	rain
4A	bartan	M	container, vessel
9B	barfiilii	A	snowy
7A	barsaat	F	rainy season
10B	bal	M	emphasis, force



1A WS	bas	Adv	enough, just, only
6A	bas	F	bus
Ap	basant	M	spring
4A	basaanaa	V T	cause to be inhabited
3C	bastii	F	colony, settlement
4B	basnaa	V	settle
7A WS	bghattar	A	seventy-two
8A	bahan	F	sister
7B WS	bahnaa	V	flow
1A	bahut	A	very
3A WS	baaiis	A	twenty-two
2C	baakii	F	remainder
5A WS	baakii	A	remaining
3A WS	baag	M	garden
1A	baazaar	M	market, baazaar
7B	baaRh	F	flood
1A	baat	F	conversation, matter
1A	baat karnaa	V T	converse
3B	baad-mēē	Adv	afterwards
7A WS	baadal	M	cloud
7B WS	baanbee	A	ninety-two
8A WS	baap	M	father (colloquial)
1C	baayāā	A	left
3B	baar	F	occasion
2A WS	baarah	A	twelve
7A	baariṣ	F	rain
8B	baal baccee	M	family, children (Pl)
6A WS	baawan	A	fifty-two
6B WS	baasaTh	A	sixty-two
1C WS	baahar	Adv	outside
4A	biknaa	V	be sold
8B WS	bichaanaa	V T	spread
8B	bichnaa	V	be spread
5B	binaa	Adv	without
8B WS	biraajnaa	V	sit down (polite)
9A	biraadrii	F	friends and relatives in the village
2C	bilkul	Adv	entirely
3B	bistar	M	bedding
3C	biic	M	middle
6A WS	biimaar	A	ill
6A WS	biimaarii	F	illness
8A WS	biiwii	F	wife
2A WS	biis	A	twenty
5A	buRhiyaa	F	old woman
6A WS	budh	M	Wednesday
6A	budhwaar	M	Wednesday
4A WS	buraa	A	bad
4A	buland darwaazaa	M	high door
2B	bulaanaa	V T	call
4C	buuRhaa	M	old, old man
4C WS	buuRhii	F	old woman
2A WS	beecnaa	V T	sell
4A	beepaRhaa	A	illiterate
1A	beer	M	(a kind of fruit)
5B	baiThak	F	meeting, sitting
9B	baiThaanaa	V T	seat
1C	baiThnaa	V	sit
2B	bairaa	M	room servant, bearer
9A	bail	M	ox
5B	boorD	M	signboard

## Glossary

1A WS	boolnaa	V Tnn	speak
7B	byoopaar	M	business
6A WS	brihaspatiwaar	M	Thursday
1C	blaaуз	F	blouse
3C	blaak	M	block of a street
9A	-bhar	Part	whole, full
4A WS	bharaa	A	full
10A	bhawan	M	building, hall
2A	bhaaii	M	brother
Ap	bhaag	M	part
9A	bhaaу	M	fortune, fate
8A WS	bhaabhii	F	older brother's wife
5A	bhaarat	M	Bharat (India)
3B WS	bhaarii	A	heavy
5B	bhaaṣaa	F	language
1A	bhii	Part	also
4C	bhiir	F	crowd
4B	bhiitar	Adv	inside
3A WS	bhuukh	F	hunger
3A WS	bhuukhaa	A	hungry
4A WS	bhuulnaa	V Tnn	forget
9A	bhēṭ	F	visit
9A	bhāṭis	F	buffalo
8A	bhoojan	M	food, meal
5A	māgaanaa	V T	send for
7A WS	maii	F	May
3C	makaan	M	building
2C	magar	Conj	but
Ap	mangal	M	Tuesday (colloquial)
Ap	mangalwaar	M	Tuesday
8B	macchar	M	mosquito
8B	macchardaanii	F	mosquito net
3B	mazduurii	F	labor charges
10B	mat	Part	not (before request forms)
4C	matlab	M	meaning
1B	mathuraa	M	Mathura (city)
2B	madad	F	help
2B	madad karnaa	V T	help
1C	madraas	M	Madras (city)
1C	madraasii	A	from Madras
Ap	man	M	maund
8B WS	manaa karnaa	V T	forbid
8A WS	manaanaa	V T	celebrate, observe
10B	manaahii	F	restriction, prohibition
10B	mantrii	M	minister
2A	marammat	F	repairs
4B	marammat hoonaa	V	be repaired
3B	marzii	F	wish
8B	mard	M	man
8B	mardaanaa	A	masculine, pertaining to men
9A	maṣiin	F	machine
4B	maṣhuur	A	famous
6B	masaalaa	M	spices, ingredients
4B	masjid	F	mosque
1B WS	mahāgaa	A	expensive
3A	mahal	M	palace
3A WS	mahiinaa	M	month
8A WS	māṭ	F	mother (colloquial)
5A WS	māṭgnaa	V T	ask for, beg
8A WS	maataa	F	mother (formal)

8A	maannaa	V T	observe, obey
1C	maaf karnaa	V T	excuse
9A	maamuulii	A	ordinary, so-so
10A	maamlaa	M	affair
7A WS	maarc	M	March
7B	maal	M	goods
9B	maal	M	road, mall
1B	maaluum	A	known
4C	maaluum hoonaa	V	seem
4C	miTTii	F	clay
1B	miThaaaii	F	sweets, candy
8A	mitr	M	friend
3A	minaT	M	minute
6B WS	mirc	F	pepper
6B	milaanaa	V T	mix, add
1B	milnaa	V	meet, be available
1A	miiThaa	A	sweet
4C	miir	M	(family name)
Ap	miil	M	mile
9C	mũh	M	mouth, face
10A	mukhy	A	main
9A WS	mumkin	A	possible
6A	mulaakaat	F	meeting, encounter, acquaintance
2B	muškil	A	difficult
4C	musalmaan	M	Moslem
7B	musaafir	M	traveller
8B	muhallaa	M	sector, district
1C	meharbaanii	F	kindness, thanks
8B	mehmaan	M	guest
1A	-mēē	P	in, among
1B WS	meez	F	table
2A WS	meem saahab	F	ma'am
2C	meeraa	A	my
3B	meeree saath	P	with me
2A	māī	Pro	I
7B WS	maidaan	M	plain, field
2A	moocii	M	shoemaker, cobbler
2B	moozaa	M	pair of socks, sock
3B	mooTar	F	car, bus
4A WS	mooTaa	A	fat
4B	maukaa	M	occasion, opportunity
4B	maukaa milnaa	V	find an opportunity
7A	mausam	M	weather
8A WS	mausii	F	mother's sister
5A	yah	Pro	this (formal)
1C	yahāā	Adv	here
3C	yahīī	Adv	near, here
3B	yahii	Pro	yee (emphatic)
1B	yaa	Conj	or
7A	yaatraa	F	trip
3B	yaatrii	M/F	traveller
9A	yaad	F	memory
4A WS	yaad karnaa	V T	remember
10A	yaanii	Conj	that is, I mean to say
3A	yūū	Adv	in this fashion
3A	yūūhii	Adv	merely (emphatic)
1A	yee	Pro	this, these, he, she, it
7B	yoojnaa	F	plan

# Glossary

3B	rakh deenaa	V T	put down
3B	rakhnaa	V T	keep, put
2C WS	rang	M	color
8A	rasooii	F	kitchen
1B	rasgullaa	M	(an Indian sweet)
10B	rahaT	M	Persian wheel
8B	rahan-sahan	M	way of living
2A	rahnaa	V	stay
7A	rahnee-waalaa	M	inhabitant
10B	raaj	M	rule
4A	raajasthaan	M	Rajasthan (state)
9A	raazii khušii	F	wellbeing
4A	raajdhaanii	F	capital
2B	raat	F	night
4A	raanii	F	queen
6B	raay	F	opinion, advice
10B	raašTr	M	nation
5B	raašTriiy	A	national
10B	raašTrpati	M	president
4B	raastaa	M	way, road
8A	raah	F	way
8A	raah deekhnaa	V T	wait for
3A	rikšaa	F	ricksha
8A WS	rišteedaar	M	relative
4C	riwaaj	M	custom
10A	riiDing ruum	M	reading room
2C	ruknaa	V	be stopped, stop
8A	ruci	F	interest
1B	rupayaa	M	rupee
4B	reegistaan	M	desert
3A	reeT	M	rate
7B	reel	F	train
3B WS	rooknaa	V T	stop
4A	rooz	Adv	every day
1B	rootii	F	roti (kind of flat, round bread)
5A	lakRii	F	wood
4C	lakhnaauu	M	Lucknow (city)
3B WS	lagaanaa	V T	apply, install
3B WS	lagna	V	be applied, be felt
6A	lagbhag	Adv	approximately
2B WS	laRkaa	M	boy
2B WS	laRkii	F	girl
5B	lafz	M	wood
4A WS	lambaa	A	tall, long
6B	lassii	F	Lassi (a beverage)
7B WS	laakh	M	hundred thousand
2B	laanaa	V Tnn	bring
6B	laayaḱ	A	worthy
2C WS	laal	A	red
2B	likhnaa	V T	write
5B	lipi	F	script
2C	lee aanaa	V	bring
3B WS	lee calnaa	V	take
1C	leekin	Conj	but
10A WS	leekhak	M	writer
3B	leeT	Adv	late
1A	leenaa	V T	take, accept
1A WS	loog	M	people
8A	lootaa	M	small container for water

10B	loo <sup>h</sup> aa	M	iron
4A	lauT <sup>h</sup> naa	V	go back
6B WS	wa <sup>h</sup> t	M	time
8A WS	wa <sup>h</sup> airah	Adv	et cetera
5A WS	wa <sup>h</sup> ah	F	reason
4B	wa <sup>h</sup> ziir	M	Mughal minister
5A	wa <sup>h</sup> raaNasi <sup>i</sup>	F	Banaras (official name)
7B	wa <sup>h</sup> dii	F	uniform
2A WS	wa <sup>h</sup> maa	M	(family name)
7B	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣ	M	year
7A WS	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣaa	F	rain
7B	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣii <sup>y</sup>	A	yearly
5A	wa <sup>h</sup> stu	F	thing, goods
5A	wa <sup>h</sup>	Pro	that (formal)
1C	wa <sup>h</sup> āṣ	Adv	there
9B	wa <sup>h</sup> ii	Pro	that very
2C	wa <sup>h</sup> apas	Adv	return
1A	wa <sup>h</sup> alaa(ii)	Part	man, woman, doer
8A	wa <sup>h</sup> astaw-mēṣ	Adv	in reality
10B	wa <sup>h</sup> kaas	M	development
5A	wa <sup>h</sup> caar	M	belief, idea
1C	wa <sup>h</sup> deeṣii	M/F	foreigner
1C WS	wa <sup>h</sup> dyaa <sup>r</sup> thii	M/F	student
10A	wa <sup>h</sup> dhi	F	process, manner
8A WS	wa <sup>h</sup> waah	M	marriage
10B	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣay	M	subject
5B WS	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣeeṣ	A	special
5B WS	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣeeṣ pra <sup>h</sup> kaar-see	Adv	especially
8A	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣwawidyaalay	M	university
5A	wa <sup>h</sup> ṣwanaath	M	Vishwanath (Hindu god)
5B	wa <sup>h</sup> isee	Adv	ordinarily, in that way
1A	wa <sup>h</sup> oo	Pro	that, those, he, she, it
6A	ṣa <sup>h</sup> niwaar	M	Saturday
5B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> bd	M	word
Ap	ṣa <sup>h</sup> rad	F	autumn
5B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> rbat	M	soft drink
2A WS	ṣa <sup>h</sup> maa	M	(family name)
1B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> har	M	city
8A	ṣa <sup>h</sup> adii	F	marriage
2B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> am	F	evening
3B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> aayad	Adv	perhaps
4B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> ah	M	ruler (old fashioned)
4B	ṣa <sup>h</sup> ahii	A	royal
10B	ṣi <sup>h</sup> ṣaa	F	education
Ap	ṣi <sup>h</sup> ṣir	M	winter
8B	ṣu <sup>h</sup> kriyaa	M	thank you
6A	ṣu <sup>h</sup> krwaar	M	Friday
5A	ṣu <sup>h</sup> ddh	A	pure
1A WS	ṣu <sup>h</sup> ruu karna <sup>h</sup> a	V T	begin
4A	ṣu <sup>h</sup> ruu hoona <sup>h</sup> a	V	be started
5A	ṣeeṣ	A	rest, remaining
8A	ṣau <sup>h</sup> k	M	fondness
5A	ṣri <sup>h</sup> ngaar	M	cosmetics
5A	sā <sup>h</sup> kraa	A	narrow
3A	sā <sup>h</sup> bhaalnaa	V	be careful, be managed
3B	sā <sup>h</sup> bhaal-kar	Adv	carefully
3B	sā <sup>h</sup> bhaalnaa	V T	be careful, manage
3A	saknaa	V	be able to

10A	sankhyaa	F	number
2A	saRak	F	street
6B WS	saRsaTh	A	sixty-seven
5A	sac	M	truth
10B	sajaa	A	decorated
5A	sajjan	M	gentleman
10B	sajnaa	V	be decorated
6B WS	sattar	A	seventy
3A WS	sattaaiis	A	twenty-seven
7B WS	sattaanbee	A	ninety-seven
6A WS	sattaawan	A	fifty-seven
7B WS	sattaasii	A	eighty-seven
2A WS	satrah	A	seventeen
7A WS	sathattar	A	seventy-seven
Ap	saniicar	M	Saturday
1A	santraa	M	orange.
10B	sanskrit	F	Sanskrit
10A WS	sanskrit	A	refined
10A WS	sanskriti	F	culture
Ap	saptaah	M	week
10A	sapruu haaus	M	Sapru House
6A	safar	M	journey
2C	safeed	A	white
1A WS	sab	A	all
4A	sabzii	F	vegetable, vegetable curry
10B	sabhaa	F	council
4B	sabhi	Adv	all (emphatic)
1A	samajhnaa	V	understand
2B WS	samay	M	time
8A	samaacar	M	news
10A	samaacaar patr	M	newspaper
7B WS	samudr	M	ocean, sea
6B	samocsa	M	vegetable or meat pie
10B	sambandh	M	relation
10B	sambandhi	A	related to
10B	sambandhi	M	relation (some relation)
9A	sambhaw	M	possible
4B	sarkaar	F	government
4A	sarkaarii	A	official, governmental
4C WS	salaam	M	(Moslem greeting)
4C	salmaa	F	(woman's name)
Ap	sawaa	M	one and one-fourth
1C WS	sawaal	M	question
2B	saweeraa	M	morning
2B	saweeree	Adv	in the morning
1B	sastaa	A	inexpensive
10A	sahaayak	M	assistant
10A	sahaaytaa	F	help
3B	sahaaranpur	M	Saharanpur (city)
10B	sahaaraa	M	help, assistance
Ap	sahii	M	correct, complete
8B	sahnaa	V T	bear, undergo
2C	saa	A	like
6A WS	saaTh	A	sixty
1C	saaRii	F	sari (woman's garment)
Ap	saaRhee	A	-and a half, half past
1B WS	saat	A	seven
3B	saath	M	company
7B	saathii	M	companion
10A	saanrkritik	A	cultural

2C	saaf	A	clean
5A	saamagrii	F	material, ingredients
3B	saamaan	M	baggage, stuff, things
3C	saamnee	Adv	in front
10B	saayans	F	science
3A	saaraa	A	all, entire
3A WS	saal	M	year
4C WS	saahab	M/F	sir, ma'am
10A	saahity	M	literature
10B	sācaaii	F	irrigation
7A WS	sitambar	M	September
5B	sineemaa	M	movie, cinema
2A WS	singh	M	(family name)
4C WS	sir	M	head
1C	sirf	Adv	only
4C	siikhnaa	V T	learn
2A WS	siitaa	F	(woman's name)
1C	siidhaa	A	straight
1C	siidhee	Adv	straight ahead
6A	sunaanaa	V T	tell
1C	sundar	A	beautiful
1B	sunnaa	V T	listen
9B	subah	M	morning, in the morning
4B	suurat	F	face, appearance
3A WS	sekanD	M	second
1C	-see	P	from, through, with
1A	seeb	M	apple
1B	seer	M	seer (weight, about two pounds)
10B	seewak	M	servant, worker
10A	seewaa	F	service
4B WS	sāītaaliis	A	forty-seven
4A WS	sāītiis	A	thirty-seven
4A	sair	F	sightseeing trip
6B	soocnaa	V T	think
7B	soonaa	V	sleep
7B	soonpur	M	Sonpur (town)
Ap	soomwaar	M	Monday
2A WS	soolah	A	sixteen
7B WS	sāu	M	hundred
9A	saubhaagy	M	good luck, good fortune
9B	skuul maasTar	M	school master
7A	sTiimar	M	steamer
3B	sTeeṣan	M	station
3C	sTainD	M	stand (taxi)
8A	sToobh	M	stove
4B	sthaan	M	place
7A	snaan karnaa	V T	bathe
2B	swis	A	Swiss
7B WS	hazaar	M	thousand
5B	hazrat ganj	M	Hazrat Ganj (street in Lucknow)
3A WS	haftaa	M	week
2B	ham	Pro	we, I
2C	hamaaraa	A	our
7A	hameeṣaa	Adv	always
4A	har	A	every, each
2C WS	haraa	A	green
10B	hal	M	plow
3B	halkaa	A	light (weight)
4A	hawaa	M	breeze, wind

# Glossary

1B	hāā	Adv	yes
1B	haath	M	hand
4C	haath mūh	M	hands and face
6A	haal	M	condition, health
6A	haal caal	M	condition (colloquial)
6A WS	haalat	F	condition
1C WS	hindii	F	Hindi
5A	hinduu	M/F	Hindu
4A	hissaa	M	part
2C	hii	Part	emphatic
2A	hūū	V A	am (māī form of hai)
Ap	hemant	M	winter
6A	heloo	Adv	hello
1A	hāī	V A	are
1A	hai	V A	is
2A	hoo	V A	are (tum form of hai)
2B	hooTal	M	hotel, restaurant
3A	hoonaa	V	become, go on, take place
9B	hooīyaar	A	careful, clever
9B	hooīyaarii	F	care, cleverness